

The book of Algoonah : being a concise account of the history of the early people of the continent of America, known as mound builders.

Contributors

Newcomb, Cyrus F.

Publication/Creation

St. Louis, Mo. : Little & Becker, 1884.

Persistent URL

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/hkcmp7sd>

License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.

**wellcome
collection**

Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
<https://wellcomecollection.org>

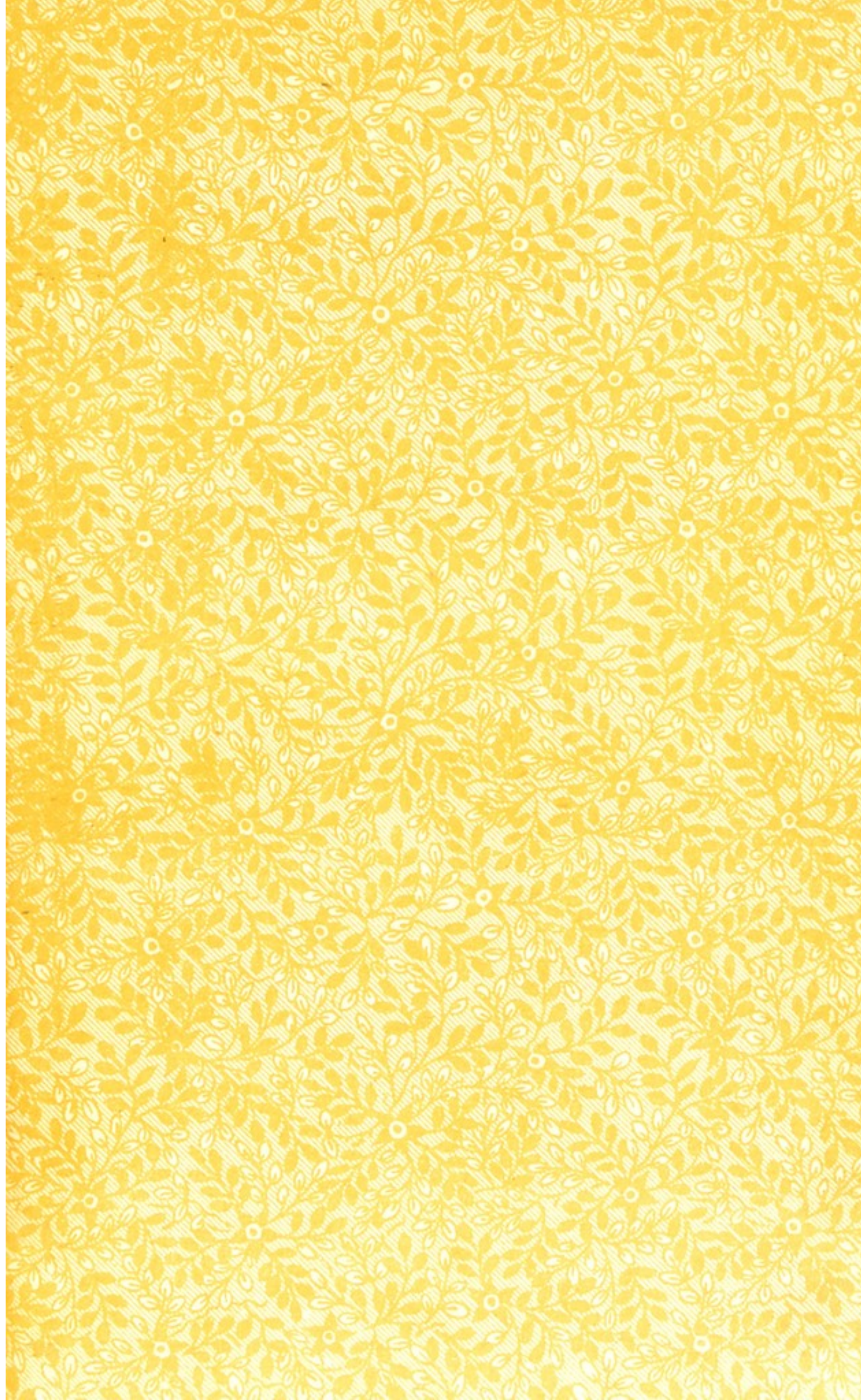


(2) ZC.5

Frank Hamilton Cushing.



22501814472



52

O. viii. 60.

Christmas 1888.

Frank Cushing Esq.
with Compliments, of

Cyrus F. Newcomb

Durango Colo.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2016

<https://archive.org/details/b24861145>

**Wellcome Library
for the History
and Understanding
of Medicine**

COPYRIGHT, 1875.

BY

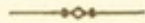
CYRUS F. NEWCOMB & COMPANY,

(2) ZC.5

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

BOOK OF ALGOONAH.



This book is given to the public with a view of throwing light on a very interesting but obscure subject. The various mounds, monuments, relics, etc., in existence in this country, have excited the curiosity of the most indifferent, as well as most enlightened men of research. Then there are so many indications of intelligent design displayed in these works, that it is no matter of surprise that scientific men should be filled with a desire to penetrate the mysterious veil of forgotten history that shrouds the people that built these remains. There are very many indications of the high antiquity of these monuments of an age long gone by, and the strong probability of their being made by a highly refined and civilized people, adds to the relish of the inquiry and deepens the mystery that envelops these lost, long forgotten people.

The remains of Ancient Egypt, being of much more recent construction, and also being situated in a land where rain never falls, and the atmosphere is uniformly

dry, are in a remarkable state of preservation, while these monuments, being formed of more perishable material, being in a moist and humid climate, and being very much older, have tumbled into confused masses of rubbish, yet, there remains enough to convince the intelligent inquirer that there is behind all this perfection of design, a mystery deep and almost unfathomable. As we first remarked, it is our intention to cast a few feeble rays of light on this dark subject ; and we are well aware that we will stir up a great deal of honest criticism, yet we are satisfied that the work contains internal evidence of its authenticity as an historical book, and we assure the scientific world that it is formed from authentic materials. We invite a careful and honest perusal of the book, and promise to further elucidate the matter at no distant day.

THE AUTHOR.

CHAPTER I.

Now it came to pass in the fourteenth year of the 849th age of the world, that Merodach was king of Assyria, and there was war in the land, for Ramases the king of Aegyptus, came up and encamped against the great city of the Assyrians, and laid seige to it, and the king Merodach was sore pressed; insomuch, that the armies of Aegyptus were about to prevail over the armies of the king Merodach. And he sent emissaries unto the king of Persia, and unto the governor of Gehalehmot, which was the country of the men who were afterward the Mound Builders, asking them to come and help him for to war against the king of Aegyptus. And Cambyses the king of Persia arose, and collected an hundred thousand men skilled in the use of the bow and spear, and came quickly, and at the close of the seventh month of the seige of the great city of Assyria, and came up and smote the armies of Aegyptus in the rear. And the great king Ramases removed thence and camped on the great plain which is over against the city and the king Merodach came out of the city, and joined his army with that of the king of Persia, and marched upon the king of Aegyptus, and when the morrow was come, the battle was begun on the great plain outside the city. And then the army of the king of Aegyptus was on this wise: of soldiers on foot, with spears and bows and battle axes, an hundred and ninety and four thousands, and

of chariots seven hundred and fifty, four men besides horsemen in each, and of battering rams one hundred and twenty, besides a great amount of armorers, and cunning workmen in iron and brass.

And the army of king Merodach was an hundred and forty thousand bow and spear men, besides chariots and their men, and as the sun rose apace the men of Persia, and of Assyria, went forth to meet the men of Aegyptus, and the men of Persia and of Assyria fell upon the men of Aegyptus, and the battle raged exceedingly hot, until the going down of the sun, and neither prevailed, and the slaughter of men that day was great, and the like thereof has not been seen since the world began.

And when the morning was come, behold the men of Persia and of Assyria being mightily refreshed, so that they arose and fell upon the men of Aegyptus with great slaughter, so that at the going down of the sun, the men of Aegyptus fled, and went across the great river, and the men of Persia and of Assyria could not follow them by reason of the darkness.

And in the darkness the king of Aegyptus arose with his army and made haste to go unto the land of Aegyptus, for he was exceedingly discomfited by reason of the men of Persia and of Assyria.

And the men of Persia and of Assyria arose and followed him for the space of three moons, over against the land of Aegyptus.

And the kings Merodach and Cambyses were minded to go over unto the land of Aegyptus.

But the King Ramases sent ambassadors, and said, long live the kings of Persia and Assyria, and let their

servant the king of Aegyptus entreat them that they come not into the land, for the people of the land are not at fault in this matter of the war with my lord the king.

But the king, even Ramases, and kings Merodach and Cambyses consulted together and sent ambassadors unto the king of Aegyptus saying, if the king of Aegyptus will give the kings of Persia and of Assyria seven hundred camel loads of gold and of silver, of precious stones and fine clothes, then give also the land of Gehalehmot unto them, then will the kings of Persia and of Assyria return from following after the king of Aegyptus.

Now the land of Gehalehmot formerly belonged to the king of Aegyptus but latterly the people were indeed free from the king of Aegyptus, and when the king of Assyria was in sore need and sent unto the governor of the land of Gehalehmot, and he would not help him, lo, the wrath of the king of Assyria was exceeding hot against the people of Gehalehmot, and he desired this thing of the king of Aegyptus, that he might be avenged against the people of Gehalehmot.

Now Algoonah of the land of Gehalehmot was lord chamberlain to the king of Assyria.

CHAPTER II.

At the time of the war between the kings of Persia and of Assyria, and the king of Aegyptus, Algoonah was lord chamberlain to the king of Assyria, and Algoonah was of the age of eighteen years. He was comely to see and of great mind, and he was greatly beloved by Merodach the king, to that extent, that all matters of import were submitted unto Algoonah. And there was nothing hid from Algoonah — not even the secret thoughts of the king. Now Algoonah was of the ancient household of the princes of Gehalehmot, and the people of the land of Gehalehmot loved and trusted in him.

The way in which he came unto king Merodach was as follows: Merodach sent unto the governor of Gehalehmot, saying, Grace and peace be unto my lord Kaiah, governor of Gehalehmot. May my lord the prince live unto the fourth generation. It is in the mind of the king Merodach to attach to himself fine favored young men from the neighboring provinces, to the end that he may find who is worthy of his trust, and it is further our intention that such young men who may be found worthy may be nobles in his realm. Now it has come to our knowledge that there is one Algoonah, of the ancient line of princes, who is a well favored lad, one whose mind is well developed. If it please my lord the governor, let Algoonah, I pray thee, come and be a member of my household, and

the friendship of thy servant Merodach will abide with the people of Gehalehmot.

Now Kaiah called the princes and nobles of the land of Gehalehmot together, with the parents of Algoonah, and laid the matter before them. And the princes and nobles and the people of Gehalehmot, after consulting together, set up a great shout, saying, The thing that the king Merodach has proposed is good, for Algoonah is a young lad of great mind, and it will be to the good of the people of Gehalehmot to have a friend in the court of Assyria.

So Algoonah, with the marshal of Gehalehmot, with an hundred and forty somahs worth of gold, precious stones, and fine ointment, set out for the land of Assyria.

Now the land of Gehalehmot was six score and eight furlongs from the land of Assyria; and the king of Assyria, was well pleased with the action of the men of Gehalehmot, and swore unto the chief marshal, saying: While the sun shines above, and the earth bringeth forth fruit beneath, will the king Merodach be a friend to the people of Gehalehmot, and whatsoever thing the prince of Gehalehmot desireth that will I do.

So the marshal journeyed back unto the land of Gehalehmot; and at this time was Algoonah twelve years of age. The king Merodach appointed from the wise men and astronomers, and cunning workmen, teachers for the lad Algoonah; and he sat at the king's table, and whatsoever the king ate of, that also did Algoonah eat of; and he grew well favored and excelled in learning, so that the teachers were confounded and durst not ask him any questions.

When Algoonah had arrived at the age of sixteen years, there was not in all the land of Assyria a man so wise, and well favored, insomuch the king appointed him to be lord chamberlain of the great and potent land of Assyria; and the people of the land of Assyria loved Algoonah; for there was a dire and loathsome pestilence prevailed in the land, and Algoonah prepared remedies of salt and ashes of the furnace, for the people to anoint themselves withal, for the pestilence was on the skin of the body, and was very grievous; and all the people were healed.

But Algoonah longed for the land of his fathers, and he often went into the secret chamber of the king's palace and wept. But the king and the people knew it not. And the king's daughter, Solicia, was deeply enamored with Algoonah, and the king Merodach was not displeased thereat, but sometimes was minded to make Algoonah his son.

Now arose the war with the king of Aegyptus, and when the king followed after Rameses, the king of Aegyptus, Algoonah went with him; and he heard the conferring together of the kings of Persia and of Assyria, and he heard the king, Merodach, swear to exterminate the men of Gehalehmot from the face of the earth; and Algoonah was sore distressed, and when he retired to his tent he waited until the kings were asleep, and he arose quickly and took Meshuah, his faithful servant, and horses, and beasts of burden, and took meal and wine, and grapes, and fine oil, and spears and swords, and made haste to depart for the land of Gehalehmot.

And when the morning was come, and the king,

Merodach, saw that Algoonah had fled, he was greatly enraged, his former love was turned to hatred, and he caused this proclamation :

Whosoever bringeth me the head of Algoonah, I will give him an hundred somahs, and a girdle, and breast plate of gold. And Jucar was captain of a host, and Jucar hated Algoonah ; and as the sun rose, Jucar took forty choice men, and started in pursuit of Algoonah, and as Algoonah and his servant passed on, they saw a maid spinning at the door of her house, and the maid was a soothsayer. And when the maid saw them she wept bitterly, and she went into the highway, and said, let my lord the young prince come in with haste, for the avenger of blood is at his heels. And Algoonah said, whither shall I go? And the maid said, let the prince's servant take the beasts to yonder wood, and let my lord the prince enter thy servant's dwelling. And he did as she desired. And the maid cast flax across the door, and Jucar came apace, and the maid spun and was singing, and Jucar came up and said, Hast thou seen a young man pass here. She answered and said, Even so my lord, on the third hour of the morning he passed the house in great haste : and Jucar said Thou liest ; lo, he is hid in thy dwelling, and he descended from his horse and made as if he would enter, and when he came in the door, the flax came around him, and the flax bound him about and entered the sinews of his flesh and he fell roaring. And the men who were with Jucar fled in great alarm, and when Algoonah saw the plight in which Jucar lay, his soul kindled within him, and he came forth and smote Jucar in the groin, and Jucar yelled out and died, and the maid said, Thine enemy is dead, thou canst pursue

thy journey in safety. But I pray thee, let me make thee a loaf and kill a goat of the fattest, for the day is far spent and thou art weary; and Algoonah said, So be it; and the maid sent a servant and called the servant of Algoonah, and he tarried there until the morning. And when the sun had arose, and the morning drew on, Algoonah said, I must leave thee. And the maid said Not so; wherever thou goest, I will go. And I will never leave thee. And it pleased Algoonah, and he said, So let it be; and the maid was of the fairest in all the land, goodly to look upon, and fair to behold. So the maid was betrothed to Algoonah, and she took a beast and rode thereon, and left her father and mother and went with him.

CHAPTER III.

And Algoonah hastened unto his own country, even the land of Gehalehmot. And the servants of Atomea, the wife of Algoonah to the number of fourteen went with them, and the father of Atomea was an husbandman, and the journey of Algoonah was by way of the desert as thou goest down into Arabia, and the journey was of the duration of three moons and a half.

So Algoonah came unto the land of Gehalehmot, and he came quickly unto Kaiah the governor, and laid the matter before him, and Kaiah called the chief men of the nation together and said, The kings of Persia and of Assyria march unto the land of Gehalehmot for to destroy it.

And the manner of the people was to determine matters of great import in public assembly. And Kaiah called the nobles of the people to order, and said, The kings of Assyria and Persia march unto the land of Gelalehmot for to destroy it from the face of the earth, and the wise men and the chief men and the nobles after they had heard this, they set up a great lamentation, saying, Woe, unto the people and the land of Gehalehmot, and they were as foolish men.

So Algoonah stood up in the midst of them and lifted up his voice and said, Ye men of the ancient and honorable land of Gehalehmot, why have ye become as children? Lo, the way of the

mountains is open unto us, and the men of Assyria cannot follow us thither; it is even so that the wrath of the Great King Merodach is exceeding hot against us and he will not leave a man living in all this land. Let us depart unto the mountains.

Now the people of Gehalehmot were shepherds and tillers of the soil, and their flocks and herds were exceeding great, insomuch that the hills and valleys were covered with them, for the land of Gehalehmot was in the mountains; and the time of the year was two months after the sheep cast their young. And Kaiah said unto Algoonah, Thou art wise above all the men of Gehalehmot, take I pray thee the lead and guidance of this people. But Algoonah said Not so, lo, thou art the leader and ruler of this people, and thy servant is but a boy. Nevertheless, I would advise thee that thou call a meeting of the chief men of the land, and take measures to avoid the king Merodach, for he will do as he has sworn unto us. And Kaiah made proclamation and sent criers through the land, saying: Let all the chief men and people, and nobles and high captains, meet at the great temple of the sun, in the chief city of the land of Gehalehmot, to consider what to do in the matter of the invasion of our land by the kings of Persia and of Assyria. And all the people of the land came quickly together, and the people were in great fear and sorrow. And Kaiah caused the golden trumpet to sound, and there was silence through all the people, and Algoonah stood up and said:

Hear all ye men of Gehalehmot: The land that you see around us from the mountains even unto the great river of the south, and from the plains unto the sea,

is it not the land of the people of Gehalehmot? Our fathers have possessed this land from the beginning, and we have done no hurt to any man, and the poor and outcast of all lands have come to us and we have made them our brothers. And the blood of not even one man rests upon any one of you. And the graves of our fathers are in this land, and the scenes of pleasure we have enjoyed are associated with these hills and valleys. And we love this the land of our birth, and we would freely die for it, for next to the mother that nursed him doth a man love his country. O, fair land of Gehalehmot, land of our birth and home of our older years, much as we love thee we must depart hence, for we are not a warlike people and our hands have never held the sword or battle-axe, and we can not meet the kings of Assyria and of Persia. O, ye men of Gehalehmot, be strong, and do not let your hearts die within you, for did not the king Merodach swear eternal friendship unto you? nevertheless he will do as he has sworn to do, even exterminate you from the face of the earth.

Now it is well known that when the king Hykos of Aegyptus did faint with all his people for want of bread, in the 600th age, that our fathers did send an hundred score lahs weight of corn to the suffering and dying people of Aegyptus. And the king of Aegyptus is our friend unto the latest generation. And when king Merodach sent unto us, how could we go, even if we were men of war, and war against the king of Aegyptus?

And when Algoonah had made an end of speaking the people set up a great noise of shouting, and trumpets, and brazen instruments. And the people said

Long live Algoonah, the hope and life of all the people.

And Kaiah commanded that the golden trumpet blow, which was a sign for all the people to be silent, and immediately there was silence among the people.

And Algoonah said further, Let the governor Kaiah be made King over all the people, for the people must have a leader with great power, and let there be captains of hundreds and captains of thousands and captains of ten thousands set over all the people, and let the movements of the people be under the direction of the king Kaiah ; and there was a mighty shout as of the sound of great thunder, saying, Long live king Kaiah. And Kaiah commanded that the golden trumpet blow, and there was silence, and Kaiah commanded Algoonah to speak on. And Algoonah said further, And let the people take their flocks and herds, and their wives and little ones, and go into the hill country that is over against the mountains, and let them remain there until the wrath of the kings of Assyria and of Persia is appeased, for the soldiers of Assyria cannot travel in the mountain country with their chariots and horses.

And let the people move with haste, but not unseemly, for it will be many days before the king of Assyria can reach us.

And when Algoonah had made an end of speaking, the old Patriarch of the people, who was of the age of an hundred and four score years, stood up and took a horn of clear oil, pure and fine, and said.

As this oil is poured out before the king Kaiah, so shall the enemies of this people and their designs come to naught. And he took a robe of blue silk and fine

cotton and laid it on Kaiah's shoulders, and he took a golden trumpet and blew long and loud, and said, Long live Kaiah, the king of the people of Gahalehmot, and the people said, Long live our great and mighty king.

And immediately the spirit of power came on Kaiah, and he arose and said, Peace be with you my people. Let every man go to his place and make haste and get him to the city of Laheiah which is on the borders of the land of Gehalemot, over against the hill country. And the people gave a great shout and every man went to his place as the king commanded.

Now Kaiah was the first king ever in the land, for the people of Gehalehmot were a simple and childlike people, and every man did right; and the government of the land was with the governor and the older men of the land.

Now when Merodach the king of Assyria, and Cambeyses the king of Persia, received the bounty from the hand of the king of Aegyptus, the king of Persia turned aside into his own land, first beseeching the king Merodach not to do hurt to the people of the land of Gehalehmot.

But the evil spirit of blood, and carnage, and desolation, had taken possession of King Merodach, and he swore vehemently that the men of Gehalehmot should not abide on the earth, and he got him up with his chief captains, and his army, and came in haste into the land of Assyria, and making great preparations he went forth unto the land of Gehalehmot; and the land of Gehalehmot was distant six score and eight furlongs from the borders of Assyria, and each furlong was one thousand English rods.

And when the army of king Merodach came unto the great river of Gehalehmot, lo, the waters were very great, on account of the melting of the snow, for it was in the time of the yearning of lambs, and he could not pass over.

CHAPTER IV.

Now it came to pass that every man hastened unto his own place as Kaiah, the king, had commanded ; and the people came to the city of Laheiah, which is on the borders of the land of Gehalehmot, over against the hill country, opposite the land of Assyria and farthest distant therefrom, and in the time of the summer rains were all the people collected together. And Kaiah, the king, commanded that there be captains chosen of hundreds, of thousands, of tens of thousands, and it was done. And Algoonah came unto the king, and said, Cause I pray thee, that there be cunning workmen chosen who may be commanded to make arms for the people, even bows and spears, and battle axes, and chariots for the archers and spear men to ride in. And Kaiah said, Behold, thou art the wisest among all the people, that even I, the king, am fain to learn of thee ; thou art general-in-chief of the people ; go forth, and do as seemeth good to thee.

Now there was among the people a cunning workman who was named Kinar, and Kinar was of the artisans, and he could make whatever he was minded, and he was twenty-two years old ; and Algoonah sought out Kinar and laid before him the matter of making arms for the men of Gehalehmot ; and Kinar said, whatsoever thou commandest that will thy servant do, and give me, I pray thee, an hundred score men, able and strong, to assist me ; and Algoonah caused the

men to be selected, and Kinar went unto the mountains and brought out iron, brass and lead, and he made great furnaces, and the smoke thereof covered all the land; and he wrought instruments of iron, and arrows of brass, and he felled trees, and made chariots such as never before were seen on earth. And Kinar came unto where the king sat, and bowed himself, and said, may my great king pardon his servant for coming into his presence unasked; and Kinar remained bowed to the floor, and Kaiah smiled upon him and said, arise and speak what is in thy mind. And Kinar opened his mouth and spake, saying, Let my potent master, the king, command that this the city Laheiah be surrounded with a wall strong and high, and if the king of Assyria come upon us, we can easily defend ourselves. And it pleased the king exceedingly, and he said, Go, my son, do as thou seest proper. And Kinar bowed himself and went forth.

Now Kinar had made cunning instruments of iron, and machines for throwing stones and for shooting large arrows, like unto the beams of a house; even more than this did he do. And the king desired to go forth and view the armament which Kinar had made; and the king rode in a chariot, and Algoonah was at his side; and the king wore an helmet and a breastplate of gold, and his dress was of blue silk; and Algoonah had instructed the people in martial order, even as he had seen in the army of king Merodach; and they stood in hundreds, and in thousands, and in tens of thousands; and the king rode between the wings of the army, and he descended from the chariot and rode upon a great black horse, and such a horse had no rival in all the land.

And Algoonah was commander of all the armies, and he blew a trumpet and the army was turned about, and the spears shone like stars for multitude ; and when the king rode before the people, there arose a shout like as when the sea is lashed by a mighty tempest, and then arose a mighty shout among the people, saying, Lead us, we pray thee, against the king of Assyria.

And the king caused them to draw near unto him, and he said, Not now, my children, the winter draweth on apace ; for the time of the falling of snow was then at hand.

Now the number of the people of Gehalehmot was as follows : Of shepherds, an hundred and ten thousand, seven score and eighty men, women and children ; and of those who were husbandmen, an hundred and fifty thousand men, women and children ; and of those who lived in the cities, an hundred and two score and ten thousand men women and children ; and of those who delved in the mountains, six score men. And the people lived among the hills and valleys over against the city of Laheiah, for the pasturage was good there, and the men had built them houses, and brought a great amount of corn and wine and things of the land, for the people of the land of Gehalehmot were very rich ; and they brought all the stuff from out the land, for the armies of the king of Assyria had not entered the land ; and when the people had left the land, Algoonah caused young men fleet of foot and strong, to stay in the borders of the land, to give warning of the approach of the army of the king of Assyria.

So the people were gathered together about the city of Laheiah ; and the king called Algoonah for a private conference, and the king said, I am minded to return

unto the land and possess it. But Algoonah said, Not so my lord the king. Thy people have never been in war and know not the manner of fighting, and lo, the armies of the king of Assyria are exceeding brave and full of courage, being a long time in war, and they will fall upon thee, and thy people will be scattered, and fall in the valleys and hills; here we are secure, for thy servant Kinar buildeth a wall strong and high around the city; and furthermore, the men of Assyria cannot come unto us, for the winter approacheth, and they are men that belong unto the warm countries of the plain which is by the great river, even the great river of the land of Assyria. And the king saw that what Algoonah said was good. Algoonah said further, Let my lord the king command that a council of the wise men and the aged men of the people be called, and let them prepare laws and regulations of the people; and the king said it is well, and he caused proclamation to be made as follows:

Let all the people hearken. It is the will of the king Kaiah that the people meet together and choose men of age and wisdom for to frame laws and regulations whereby we may better govern the people, and let every thousand men select one. And it was done as the king commanded; and the king sent forth criers again and commanded that those who had been selected meet in the city of Laheiah, where the king dwelt; and those who were selected, to the number of two score and five, met in the temple of the people of Laheiah; and Kinar had made a throne of ivory and satin wood and gold and precious stones for the king to sit upon. And the king caused the trumpet of gold to

blow, and there was silence ; and the herald lifted up his voice and said :

Let the council and people of Gehalehmot hearken unto what the great king saith. And the trumpets and brazen instruments sounded ; after which Kaiah rose on his throne and said :

Peace be unto you. It is the desire of the king that this council make laws suitable for the government of the people, and first it is necessary that there be a leader for the council. It is **not** seemly for the king to be one of the council, so choose one of your own number for a leader.

And when the king had ceased speaking the men of the grand council bowed themselves and said, It is good what the king saith. And Havillah rose and said, what man among all the men of Gehalehmot is more suitable for leader of the grand council than Algoonah ? And immediately all the people and the men of the grand council cried out, Long live Algoonah. And the king commanded that the golden trumpet blow, so there was silence.

So Algoonah was made leader and chief man of the grand council. When the council met, Kaiah the king commanded that Algoonah sit upon the throne made by Kinar. And Algoonah sat thereon, and when the council were gathered together, Algoonah commanded that there be silence, and he said, Ye men who represent the people of Gehalehmot, ye have been chosen on account of your age and wisdom, see that the laws ye make be such as will result in the good of all the people ; for the people of Gehalehmot are to be a renowned nation, and what ye do in this council will affect the people of the world through all coming time.

Now we are a simple people, having tilled the earth and tended our flocks and herds, and have never been in war, and so our hands are not skilled in battle. We must be able to meet the men of the world in battle; so let our laws not only be just and merciful, but very strict in all our dealings with other nations. And much more did Algoonah say which will appear in due time.

And when the king of Assyria hastened to come unto the land of Gehalehmot, as was before related, when he came unto the great river of the people of Gehalehmot, the waters were swollen greatly, on account of the melting of the snow among the mountains; and at the time of the earing of the wheat the waters subsided, and the king of Assyria made himself ready to cross into the country with his army. And on a certain day as the evening came on, there came great swarms of flies, very large and of a green color, and the flies bit the horses of the king's army so shrewdly that the men lost all control of them, and the horses fled across the plain unto the land of Assyria. And there was not left a horse in all the army of the king Merodach, and he was exceeding angry; and he swore by the gods of his fathers that the land of Gehalehmot should be utterly desolate, and he sent chosen men, who brought asses, that peradventure he might return and make other preparations for to overrun the land of Gehalehmot. Now the men of Gehalehmot knew of the flies that live on the waters of the great river.

CHAPTER V.

When the messengers whom the king, Merodach, had sent down unto the land of Assyria had come unto the chief city, they laid tribute upon the people for asses and for oxen to bring the king and the merchandise of the army back unto the great city of Assyria. And of asses they levied an hundred score, and of oxen two hundred score, for the king had charged them to bring no more horses unto the place of the flies. And the messengers returned with the asses and the oxen, and the king left men to guard the merchandise and chariots which they were unable to bring away, intending to return and bring away the residue. And the king's chariot was drawn by oxen, and he had a youth who was of a humorous disposition, to make merry for him when he was sad, and the youth was called Guyges, and as he passed by he cried out—

Lo! the great king rideth in a chariot of oxen; intending thereby to make the king merry, for he saw that the king was heavy of spirit. And the anger of the king was kindled against Guyges, and he arose in his chariot and hurled a javelin at Guyges, and in his anger he threw awry, and the javelin missed him, and Guyges arose and fled in great haste, and the king commanded that he be slain instantly.

But the soldiers made as if they would pursue him, but he escaped and came into the land of Gehalehmot, and he came unto the messengers of the king, Kaiah;

and he was brought unto the king, and Kaiah said unto him, Whence comest thou, my son? And Guyges bowed himself unto the floor, and told him, and he was taken into the nation and became a notable man, as we shall see. And Guyges was at that time fifteen years old.

And king Merodach came unto his own land; and the year was so far spent, that he deemed it best not to fall upon the land of Gehalehmot that year, especially as his young men, who had spied out the country, told him that the people had removed unto the mountains.

But the anger of king Merodach waxed hotter than ever, albeit he could not sleep upon his bed at night, thinking how he might come unto the men of Gehalehmot.

And the great council was in session continually until the time of the mid-winter feasts; and the people had plenty of food and houses to dwell in. And Kinar made many curious things for war, and household convenience.

And it came to pass that at the time of the mid-winter feasts, the yellow men who lived beyond the mountains, happened to come over to plunder and kill, for they were of an evil and murderous carriage, but had never come over that way before. And of a sudden they fell upon the men who were farthest on the mountains and began to shoot at them with arrows and spears, and the men fled in great disorder. And a messenger came quickly unto Algoonah in the council and told him, and his spirit burned within him, and he called unto the chief captains, saying, make ready in haste a thousand horsemen to pursue and drive out

the robbers, even the yellow men, for it was known that such men lived over against the great desert which is among the mountains. And the horsemen were quickly made ready, and Algoonah took him a bow with arrows, and a spear, and a sword which for sharpness was never equalled. And when the morning was come, Algoonah rode forth toward where the yellow men were, and they were not expecting resistance. And Algoonah fell upon them as they were eating, and he smote them vehemently, so that there were many slain; and the yellow men fled in great confusion, and tarried not until they came into their own country, and for many years they durst not come by way of the mountains over into the land of Gehalehmot.

And Algoonah returned unto the city, and in this there were none of the men of Gehalehmot injured.

And the work of the grand council was brought to an end; and on a day appointed the people were assembled to hear the laws and regulations made by the grand council.

And Kaiiah, the king, sat upon the throne made for him by Kinar, and the king caused a herald to stand forth and make proclamation, and the herald lifted up his voice and said:

Hear all ye people and men of Gehalehmot.

It hath seemed good to our most gracious and potent king, to cause men of age and wisdom to be selected from among the people, for to frame laws and regulations for the better government of the people, and also to regulate matters that may arise among the people, and among other nations.

Hear ye therefore while I read unto you what the council hath written.

And the laws were written upon the skins of goats fine and white. And the herald read unto the people.

Now the laws and regulations were divided into three great divisions.

First: The relations sustained between the king and the people.

Second: The relations of the people to each other.

Third: The relations of the people with other nations.

And the first division was after this manner:

The king is supreme in all the land; whatever he saith shall be done. And the men of Gehalehmot never loose their allegiance unto the king. And if one of the men of Gehalehmot depart unto another land, the king of Gehalehmot must protect him, save in murder or robbery of any kind; and the men of Gehalehmot cannot enter into any treaty or union or alliance with any other people, save by consent of the king.

And the king of Gehalehmot is responsible unto the people save only in the matter of needless and expensive war. And in small matters the people will not trouble the king, but refer the matter unto the magistrates; and there cannot be a man slain for punishment except the king consent; and it must always be considered that the king can do no wrong, for if he doeth wrong, he is not doing as the king should do.

And if the king command a man to do a reasonable and possible thing, and he doeth it not, then that man shall be cast out from among the people.

The king is king, first by the will of the people, and this can never be taken from the king. And when the king chooseth, he may call a grand council of all the

people, to determine matters of grave import ; and when the king seeth proper, he may select from among the men of Gehalehmot, who shall be king when he dieth. And if one so selected shall die, then shall he make another selection, and when the ruling king dieth, then shall the Patriarch, or oldest man of the people, pour out an horn of fine and pure oil before him, and cast upon his shoulders the blue robe of Kaiah, and set a golden crown upon his head, and in the presence of all the people proclaim him to be king ; and from that time he shall be the king of all the people of Gehalehmot ; and he shall sit upon the throne of Kaiah and shall rule the people.

Every one who is born of the people of Gehalehmot, who is of sound mind and body, shall, when he arriveth at the age of fourteen years, be free, except in his allegiance unto the king. And every man child shall be subject unto the commands of the commander-in-chief of the army of Gehalehmot, except he serve in the armies in time of peace only, for the space of two years.

And in time of war, the commander-in-chief of the armies may call upon all men of Gehalehmot, save one of a household ; and the whole people shall be taught the use of the bow and spear, and of the management of horses. And if a man shall be slain in the army, then shall the king of Gehalehmot pay unto his father, or his mother, or his wife, an hundred somahs. And every man's cattle, and his sheep, and his horses, and his clothes, and his corn, and his oil, be his own, save in desperate emergency of the whole people, and then it may be taken, but he must receive it back from the king. And if a man detain any merchandise, or animals,

or other stuff, from any other of the people of Gehalehmot, he shall be caused to restore unto him who hath been wronged, two fold.

And if anyone take out from his neighbor's house or enclosure, by stealth, anything of value whatsoever, then shall the man be cast out from among the people.

And whoso taketh the life of his fellow, shall surely be put to death, in presence of the people; and who plotteth against the king, shall be put to death also. And whoso setteth on fire his neighbor's house, shall be put to death.

And all the men of Gehalehmot shall be the husband of a wife; and if any one cometh unto the age of twenty-two years and hath not taken a wife, he shall be brought unto a magistrate, and he shall be made to show cause why he hath not.

And all matters of small import shall be left to the magistrates; but anything of great or serious import shall be left to the judgment of the king. And if any magistrate do that which is not just, then shall that matter be laid before the king; and from the decision of the king there shall be no appeal; and if a magistrate be unjust, he shall be required to restore unto the man wronged, and be cast out of his place; and all the people shall be required to pay unto the magistrates of their substance, to sustain the magistrates, and the army, as well as the king.

And the people of Gehalehmot must deal justly with other nations; and if a man of Gehalehmot rob or otherwise injures any man of any other nation, and it shall be determined by a magistrate that he be guilty,

then shall he be sent into that nation, to be dealt with according to their customs.

And if the men of any other land invade the land of Gehalehmot, and the king or ruler of the land will not make treaty, then shall the king of Gehalehmot call out the armies of Gehalehmot, and march upon that people and war against them. And if the king of Gehalehmot hear of any nation designing war upon the people thereon, he shall make ready for war; and the king and people shall have, as near as possible, peace with all men, and not go to battle to help other nations, except as occasion may demand for the peace and welfare of the people.

Now all the laws as then written, behold it is very lengthy, and there was nothing of any import but what it treated upon.

And when the heralds had ceased reading, the people bowed themselves before Kaiah, and said, This is very good, and we will be governed by these laws and regulations.

CHAPTER VI.

Now when the king of Assyria had returned unto his own country, he called all the nobles and great captains together for to hear the words of the history of all the kings who had been before him, and which was the custom of all the kings from the beginning.

And when the king had seated himself he commanded that the scribes and heralds should read from the great book of records of all the kings of Assyria. And when the great book was opened they read that how in the beginning Ninus had founded the great city of the Assyrians; and the heart of the king Merodach was filled with pride and puffed up with vanity. And he commanded that there be read the history of his own reign; and they did so. And the heralds read, that when Algoonah was brought up from the land of Gehalehmot, the king Merodach had sworn to be a friend to the people of Gehalehmot unto the latest generations.

And when the king heard that, he turned pale, and his knees smote together for rage. And he ordered the scribe to cease, and he commanded that the assembly be disbanded, and that every one enter unto his own place.

And he set about immediately to organize his army at once for the invasion of the land of Gehalehmot.

Now Algoonah had sent one Servinus, a man of shrewd parts, unto the land of Assyria; and Servinus

could speak the language of the Assyrians perfectly, for he abode in that land as shepherd unto one of the mighty men of Assyria. And Algoonah said unto Servinus, go up unto the land of Assyria, and spy out what the king doeth, and bring me word again.

And Servinus went unto the land of Assyria at the time of the falling of the leaves, and he came unto Postimar, who was gate-keeper to the king; and Postimar said, Who art thou? and Servinus said, I am of the lower country, and behold, my flocks and herds die, by reason of the failure of grass; and I have come up thither for to get employment.

And Postimar said, What canst thou do?

And he said, I am an expert in the management of horses.

And Postimar said, Lo! the king desireth a man skilled in the management of horses, for to take charge of the king's chariot horses; come unto me at the fourth hour to-night, and I will see the lord of the armament for thee.

So Servinus came; and the gate-keeper said, The lord of the armament desireth to see thee first, and talk with thee; and Servinus went unto the lord of the armament. And Servinus was of a cunning and deceitful countenance. And he could moreover put on a pleasing face. And when he was come into the presence of the lord, he bowed and worshipped him; and the lord said unto him, Whence comest thou? and Servinus answered and said, From below. And the lord asked him if he could manage and care for horses, and Servinus said, Yea, my lord; and the lord commanded the master of the king's stable to have him in, and see if he told the truth.

Now it happened that since the horses had been bitten by the flies, no man could lay harness upon them, and they did kick most violently, so that the servants of the king's stable had been sorely maimed and when Servinus had entered unto the stables, the master commanded that he should lay the harness upon the black horses of the king.

Now Servinus had been told by a lad who was there, of the actions of the horses, and the cause thereof, and he had prepared gums and spices which were in the hem of his robe; and when he went in, the horses smelled of the gums and spices, and suffered him to cast the harness upon them; and he was commanded to drive through the street in the king's chariot; and he did so; and it was told the king, behold a man is found who can manage the king's horses; and the king was greatly pleased thereat, and he commanded that the chariot be made ready so that he could ride, and in this manner did Servinus become one of the king's household. And he remembered all he had heard; and when the king caused the scribes and heralds to read from the book of records, Servinus was there and listened.

And the laws which the grand council of the people of Gehalehmot made, were written upon goat skins; and they were laid away among the king's treasures, for the people of Gehalehmot were very rich.

And the winter wore on apace; and the king Kaiah, sent for Algoonah, and said, When the spring returneth, shall we return unto the land of Gehalehmot for to possess it?

And Algoonah said, Not so, my lord the king, for the

anger of the king Merodach is still hot against us, and we cannot meet him.

Now Kinar had builded a wall, strong and high, around the city of Laheiah ; and the measure of the wall was one furlong on a side, and it was four square, and there were three great gates on a side ; and at night there were great bars of iron and brass, cast across the gates ; and there were ditches full of water round about the walls ; and there were bridges over the ditches before the gates ; and the bridges were so made that the men of the city could pull them in. And Kinar did all this and more, for there were towers for the men to shoot from, over against the gates.

Now when the spring was fully come, on a certain day it was told Algoonah, Behold a man strangely dressed cometh in haste ; and he was brought unto Algoonah, and unto king Kaiah, and when he had entered, Algoonah saw that it was Servinus, whom he had sent down into the land of Assyria ; and he came in unto Algoonah and unto king Kaiah ; and Algoonah said, What news my son ? and Servinus said, The king of Assyria cometh, with an hundred and forty thousand men.

And Kaiah said, Command that the army march against him ; and Algoonah replied, Not so, my lord the king, he will defeat us with great slaughter. Then said Kaiah, What had we better do ? And Algoonah said, Let every fourth man move over into the hill country, and let them take the wives and the little ones, the flocks and the herds of the residue of the people ; and let forty thousand chosen men stay here and hold the city, for we cannot lose the stuff and the merchandise which is in the city. Now the people had

much corn, and wine, and oil, and other provisions, and cloths ; and merchandise laid up in the city of Laheiah ; so part of the men came away from the city and moved back unto the hill country ; and the rest, to the number of forty thousand, who were well armed, stayed in the city of Laheiah. Now when the wives and little ones of those who stayed came to leave, such lamentation and sorrow never have been heard unto this day.

And the king of Assyria came over the great river of the land of Gehalehmot, for the time of high water and of flies was not yet ; and the young men of Algoonah he drove before him unto the hill country which is over against the city of Laheiah.

And when the king Merodach saw no one save the young men who gave the alarm, and no cattle and no flocks and herds, he marveled greatly ; and he called an hundred chosen men, and said, Go, spy out the people of the land of Gehalehmot, and bring me word where they are ; and the chosen men followed the spies of Algoonah, until they came unto the city of Laheiah. And they came back, and told the king Merodach, and they said, We saw a strong city, walled strong and high, and towers for archers, and we saw further many armed men ; and behold this strong city is among the hills, where there is much snow ; and thy servants think not that we can come thither.

And the king, when he heard what the messengers told him, was very angry ; and he commanded that the army move apace on that city.

And when the army of king Merodach came unto the hills, where there was snow, he could go no further with his horses and chariots ; and he left his horses and

chariots, and commanded that Algoan, his chief man of war, should take a hundred thousand men and go up and take the city.

So the army of king Merodach came up, and encamped against the city of Laheiah; and the men of Assyria were of a warm country, and when they came unto the city of Laheiah, they were taken sick of a dire disease, and their necks swelled up, and there was not a sound man in the army of king Merodach. And Serwinus had been with the army of Assyria; and when he heard this he came and told Algoonah, and he came in the night; and when the morning was come, Algoonah took the trumpet and the ensign of the people, and he blew the trumpet, and called out the men of Gehalehmot with their arms; and they fell upon the men of Assyria. Now the men of Assyria were of a very brave and courageous disposition; and when the army of Gehalehmot marched out upon them, they formed in line to meet them; and the chief captain sounded the trumpet, and the army of Assyria marched down to meet the men of Gehalehmot. The king staid back in the land of Gehalehmot, a distance of four-score furlongs; and he had fifty thousand chosen men.

So there was battle between the men of Assyria and the men of Gehalehmot. And Algoonah rode in front of the people; and he had a golden helmet on his head, and a sword of fine iron in his hand, and he led the army against the hosts of Assyria. And the men of Assyria were encamped in the valley which is over against the city of Laheiah; and the battle was begun at the rising of the sun. And Algoonah had caused proclamation to be made, saying:

Fear not to shed blood this day, for behold the men of Assyria have no cause to war against us, but let every man be strong and of good courage, and let him remember his wife and little ones, and let him remember the fair land of Gehalehmot.

So they fell to battle, and the fighting was exceeding sore, even to the going down of the sun; and the army of Assyria did not fight well, on account of the disease of their throats.

Nevertheless, the men of Gehalehmot prevailed not at the going down of the sun, and of the men of Gehalehmot there fell that day an hundred and two score, but of the men of Assyria there fell six thousand; And when the night was come Algoonah returned unto the city, and drew in the bridges; and there was much sorrow in the city of Laheiah, on account of the men who had fallen.

When the morning was come, Algoonah lifted himself up and got him upon his horse, and came forth to meet the men of Assyria. And the spirit of Algoonah burned within him; and he smote the men of Assyria right and left, and the men of Assyria fled by way of the plain. And an archer of the army of Assyria smote Algoonah on the buckles of his armor, and he fell from his horse; and the men of Gehalehmot, when they perceived that Algoonah had fallen, returned from pursuing the men of Assyria; and they found not Algoonah when the evening was come, for he was lying in a heap of those who were slain, for the body guard of Algoonah had contended strongly around him.

Now Algoonah was smote in the temple, but not killed, but the strength of life had left him; and it was told Kaiah, Behold, Algoonah lieth slain on the

field. And Kaiah laid aside his raiment, and put on mourning, and went forth with two lads who bore a torch; and Kaiah wept bitterly as he went along; and he came over against the place where Algoonah lay, and he set up a great lamentation, saying:

O, how can the people of Gehalehmot spare thee? thou life and strength of all the nation! How is the strong and mighty cut down, and the aged and useless spared!

And Kaiah rent his hair, and made loud lamentations. And Algoonah had come to himself, but could not get up on account of the men who were upon him; and his reason returned, and he heard the king lamenting, and he lifted up his voice, and said:

O, king Kaiah, live a thousand years! and may thy people be a strong and mighty nation; and may the widows and orphans of this day be speedily comforted. Thy servant, Algoonah, still liveth; cause, I pray thee, some one to come and remove me hence.

And Kaiah ran in haste, and drew him forth, and kissed him, and wept upon him a long while; and they brought Algoonah in haste unto the city. And when they had examined him, they found that his head was still sound, and that no great damage befell him, and Kaiah commanded that the dead, both of Assyria and of Gehalehmot, be buried in the plain which is over against the city of Laheiah.

Now the remnant of the army of Assyria came unto the place where king Merodach was, and they were sore discomfited because of the men of Gehalehmot, and of the disease in their necks. And the king was beside himself with rage; and he commanded that the general and chief captains be put to death; and it

was done. Nevertheless, the king saw that it was not expedient to go up against the city of Laheiah until the summer was come; and he left Shalmanezer, his son, in command of the army; and he returned with ten thousand men to his own land, saying:

I will send you up quickly more men than there are stars in the heavens; and we will utterly demolish these people from the face of the earth.

And he got him in haste unto the land of Assyria.

Now Shalmanezer had hated Algoonah, when he was in his father's house; and he longed to destroy him and the people of Gehalehmot, even as his father did; and he had told the king Merodach, Behold, the fellow whom ye brought up from this cursed land, see what trouble he causeth thee.

And the time of summer came on, and the armies which king Merodach had raised, came and encamped with Shalmanezer; and the army of Shalmanezer now numbered three hundred and ninety thousand men, besides horses and chariots.

So it was told unto Kaiah, Behold the armies of Assyria come unto the land, like unto the stars of heaven for multitude, and chariots and horses without number.

And Kaiah called the grand council; and Algoonah had recovered from his hurt, and he stood up and said:

Lo, it is as I told thee. Know I not the King of Assyria and his son? Let us hasten and leave this the city of Laheiah, and go unto the other side of the mountain country, even unto the great river of the yellow men, for the yellow men lived an hundred score furlongs up the river.

And the men of Gehalehmot were much depressed ; but they saw the truth of what Algoonah said ; and they said, Let our king do as seemeth best.

So they made ready ; and they sent unto those who had taken the flocks and herds, and brought animals and laid stuff thereon ; and all the people left the city of Laheiah, and come over the hill country unto the great river of the yellow men. And when the time of the singing of birds was come, all the men of Gehalehmot came unto where the flocks and herds, and the women and children were, and the people camped there for the space of three days ; and there was great lamentation on account of those who had fallen in the battle with the men of Assyria.

And Kaiah called all the people together ; and he took off his kingly robe, and threw dust on his head, and lifted up his voice in great weeping. And when he had wept a long while, he spake unto the people, and said :

Ye people of Gehalehmot : This is indeed a sad day. Lo ! I look around me, and see there is a great sorrow. We shall come together, and many faces will appear among us no more. They are fallen, their bodies were cast between you helpless women and children, and the darts of Assyria pierced them. How are the brave sunk to dust, to arise no more forever. The years shall come and go, rain shall come in its season, and the leaves shall shoot forth ; but the brave and loved of earth rise no more. But they are not dead. Lo, they go before us. They whisper words of comfort to our afflicted hearts, and bid us weep no more. O loved ones who have fallen, weeping overcometh us ; but we feel our hearts lifted up with joy to think ye have fallen in the noblest manner for man to die.

CHAPTER VII.

And it came to pass that the men of Gehalehmot came over unto the river of the north, even the river that runs through the land of the yellow men, and they went seven days journey down the river, and encamped in a valley where there was much grass, and they remained there until after the animals had cast their young; and Kaiah gave command after the end of the fourth month that the people prepare to go forward; and they journeyed along the river for the space of three months, and they came unto the land of Mozman, and word was brought unto the king of Mozman, saying:

Behold, there cometh unto our land a strange people with their flocks and their herds, and their wives and their little ones; and the king of Mozman sent emissaries unto Kaiah, saying: Whence comest thou, and whither art thou going? And Kaiah sent Servinus, he that tamed the king's horses, and bid him tell the king of Mozman who they were; and Servinus came unto the court of Mozman, and he obtained audience with the king; and Servinus bowed himself unto the king and said:

Thy servants are the people of Gehalehmot, and we were a peaceable and contented people, who did wrong to no man, neither shed we any man's blood, and our occupation is that of herdsmen, and the land of Gehalehmot has been held by our fathers even from the beginning, and unto no man have we paid tribute.

And behold, there was war between the king of Assyria and the king of Aegyptus, and the king of Assyria sent unto thy servants, saying, come up and help me to war against mine enemy ; and the Governor of the land of Gehalehmot returned answer, saying :

Lo, thy servants the people of this land are in league of friendship with the king of Aegyptus and we cannot war against him, even also, thy servants the people of Gehalemot know not how to war, never having been in battle.

And when the king Merodach heard the answer given by the governor, lo, his anger waxed hot against our people, so that after he had returned from pursuing after the king of Aegyptus, he marched against our land.

So Servinus told the king of Mozman all the history of the invasion of the land, and the battle ; and when he had made an end of speaking, the king of Mozman was exceeding wrath and he rent his clothes and said, Evil be unto the king and the people of Assyria. And he commanded that there be presents sent unto Kaiah, the king, and he caused a parchment roll to be written of the history of the people of Gehalehmot, and he ordered that it be put among the history of his own people.

And he sent a letter unto Kaiah, saying, in ten days will I come down to visit thee, make ready to meet thy servant the king of Mozman, and he signed thereto his name, which was Amarah.

And when Kaiah had read the letter and heard what Servinus said in regard to his audience with the king, (and Kaiah had fetched the throne which Kinar had made for him) he caused a tent of blue cloth to be set

up, and he set a banner of the people of Gehalehmot before the tent, and he made the people sweep the earth with brooms made of brushwood, and commanded that on the day when the king of Mozman should visit him, that all the people should abstain from work.

So the day arrived. Now the distance from where Kaiah was unto the capital of the king Amarah was the space of three days journey. And Kaiah sat in his tent, and when the chariot of the king Amarah drew near, Kaiah commanded that the golden trumpet sound; and the king of Mozman got him out of his chariot and bowed himself, and Kaiah bowed himself also; and Amarah said:

Long live the king of Gehalehmot. And Kaiah said also, long live the king of Mozman; and the kings embraced each other, and Kaiah besought the king Amarah to enter his tent, and he did so, and Kaiah spake unto Amarah, saying:

Let not my lord the king be angry with me, for entering his grounds without permission, and Amarah said, Thy ambassador hath told me the circumstances of thy passage hither; lo, all I have is thine, make thyself contented and abide in our land.

And long did the kings confer together, for they were of a kindred mind.

And the escort of the king was the General of his hosts, and an hundred men with brazen armor and shields of fine iron; and Algoonah had the general of the hosts into his own tent, and ordered that dinner be prepared for both the kings, and for himself and the generals, and it was done; and when the conference was over, Kaiah showed the king, Amarah, the people

of Gehahlehlot, with their flocks and herds, and when he saw he marveled greatly, saying :

How comest thou to arm thy people in so short a time, in such a splendid manner?

And Kaiah called Kinar and told Amarah of his skill and cunning, and Amarah smiled on him, and said :

May thy life be long for the good thou hast done thy people.

And when he had returned, Amarah bowed himself unto Kaiah, saying :

Let thy people rest in this place, and thou come up with thy chief captain and thy body guard, and view the land of Mozman.

And Kaiah said : It is good, what my lord the king has spoken. Lo, I will come up and see thee, in the space of two moons.

And Amarah embraced him, and departed unto his own land.

And Kaiah made ready, and when the time was come for him to visit the king, Amarah, he took Algoonah and a chosen band of fifty strong and comely youths, and also Servinus, and got him up unto the king's place, and unto the chief city of the men of Mozman, which is over against the great river of the yellow men ; and when he was come nigh unto the city, there came out to meet him, the army of the king of Mozman, which was like unto the sands of the sea for multitude. And the army of Amarah formed in two lines, for the space of two furlongs from the gates of the city.

And when Kaiah had come unto the gates the musicians set up a loud noise of trumpets, and of brazen and of stringed instruments, and a herald which stood

over against the great gate of the city, lifted up his voice, and cried out :

Make way for the great king of the south country.

And when he had entered the gate, the herald again said :

Welcome unto the city of the people of Mozman.

And a guard walked on foot before the king, Kaiah, and they marched for the space of a furlong and a half into the city, for it was very great, and the guard showed Kaiah and his people into a palace made ready for him ; and there were servants in scarlet robes, and in golden crowns, to wash him, and to wait upon him ; and a feast was there made ready, and there were maidens there, and music for to entertain him with singing while he was eating, and the king, Kaiah, spent the night there.

And when the morning was come, a messenger came in unto Kaiah, and the messenger bowed himself unto the floor, and said :

My lord, the king of Mozman cometh at the third hour for to welcome the king of the south, and to bring him unto his own palace.

And Kaiah smiled on the messenger, and bid him stand aside.

And at the third hour there was the sound of trumpets at the door of the palace, where Kaiah was, and the people in the palace all prostrated themselves unto the floor, as was their custom, in presence of their king ; and a servant of the king, Amarah, entered and made proclamation, saying :

The king of Mozman entereth.

And Kaiah bowed himself, and the king of Mozman entered ; and Amarah embraced Kaiah, and said :

Much honor doth thy servant receive this day by reason of the visit of his brother, the king of Gehalehmot.

And Kaiah said: Long live the king of Mozman.

And after they had eaten, the king, Amarah, ordered his chariot made ready, and he caused Kaiah to ride beside him.

As they went forth the people in the street bowed themselves, and Kaiah greatly marveled at the magnificence of the city of the people of Mozman.

Algoonah rode in another chariot behind, with the lord chamberlain of the king's palace; and Algoonah was clad in the vestments of the general-in-chief of the people of Gehalehmot; and he had a golden helmet on his head, and a golden shield, and his armor was like unto fire to look upon, and his helmet was open, and he bowed unto the people, and the people were overcome by the beauty of his countenance, and the noble manner of his bearing. And the people cried, Long live the young prince of the south! And they came apace unto the king's palace. And Amarah got him out, and bid Kaiah welcome unto his palace; and the servants cast cloths in the way, and Amarah took Kaiah by the hand, and he led him into the palace.

And the trumpeters did blow exceedingly loud, and the people set up a great shout, saying: welcome unto the king of the south; and when they were gone in, the king bid a chamberlain of the palace to show Kaiah unto his place, and he bowed himself and took Kaiah unto the inner palace. Now the room where Kaiah was shown, was of a magnificence never seen before, the sheets of the bed were of the finest, pure, and white, and there was an audience chamber, where he

might receive the people, and there was a room with water of roses flowing in fountains for the king Kaiah to wash himself ; and there was a room filled with books and histories of the people of Mozman, for they were an old and powerful race, and there were servants of the yellow men, and of the black men, and they did lay hold on Kaiah, and stripped his royal robe from him, and they washed him in the fountains ; and when the king Amarah was set down for to eat, he sent his son the prince of the people to fetch Kaiah, and he set Kaiah at his right hand, and they did eat, and while they ate, a band of musicians did sing and play, and there were those of a humorous mind who did amuse the kings, and when the evening was far spent, Amarah embraced Kaiah and sent him with his son the prince to see him to bed.

And when the morning was come and they had eaten, Amarah said unto Kaiah, behold, to-day I must sit in the great hall of judgment ; and he made Kaiah to sit beside him before the people.

And Kaiah sat on the throne beside the king of Mozman, and the king Amarah did judge the people that day, and he asked Kaiah how he should decide ; and the spirit of wisdom was that day on Kaiah, so that he did judge with great cunningness.

And the king Amarah was so much pleased, that he ordered that the people should bow unto Kaiah, even as they did unto him ; and it was so.

Now when the king Amarah had made an end of judging the people, which was done three times a year, he ordered that the royal chariot be made ready, and he bid Kaiah to ride beside him, and they rode forth and viewed the land of Mozman.

Now the land was exceeding great, and it extended from the great river of the north, even down to the desert in the south, and from the land of the yellow men, even six hundred furlongs to the eastward. And the land of Mozman was a goodly land, fair to see and very fertile, and when the kings had viewed the land, they came into a valley where two rivers met, and the valley was fine and large, and there was pasturage and much water, and everything convenient, and the valley was four score furlongs on a side. And Amarah bid Kaiah to view the valley, and he said, All this will I give thee and thy people; enter I pray thee and possess it. And Kaiah did weep, and he kissed Amarah, and said, Nay my brother, thy people must needs require this valley.

And Amarah said, look around thee, from the river even unto the desert, and all the plain, doth not my people have land enough and to spare? and Kaiah said, We will come down and possess the land if thou wilt take tribute of us. And Amarah cast dust upon his head and said, What evil shall come upon me if I take tribute of my brother.

So Kaiah consented, and they returned unto the city of the people of Mozman, and they had been viewing the land of Mozman for the space of two months, and the time of harvest was at hand, and Kaiah returned unto his own people, and there was much joy at his return, so the people of Gehalehmot went down and possessed the valley which the king of Mozman had given them.

CHAPTER VIII.

Now, when the snow had left the mountains, Shalmanezzer, the king of Assyria's son, came up and encamped near the city of Laheiah, and he sent runners over the mountains for to see what had become of the people of Gehalehmot; and the men of Gehalehmot had been gone for the space of a month. But it so happened that the yellow men who lived the contrary way on the river from which the people of Gehalehmot had gone, had come down for to steal and pillage, and they were a cunning and crafty people; and they saw the messengers of Shalmanezzer, and they fled in haste unto their own land, thinking that Algoonah had returned to punish them for the robbery they had done in the city of Laheiah.

So the messengers of Shalmanezzer saw the tracks of their beasts, and they said, To this way goeth the people we seek; and they made haste unto Shalmanezzer, and told him, thus and so went the people ye seek. And Shalmanezzer got him up, and, leaving his chariots and his armaments in the city of Laheiah, he came hastily over into the great plain which is by the river of the north, even the river of the yellow men; and it was about the time of the rising of the waters in the great river of Aegyptus; and Shalmanezzer set his army in order and marched in the direction taken by the yellow men, which was contrary to the way taken by the men of Gehalehmot; and he went up the

plain for the space of two months, and he came unto the country of the yellow men. And the yellow men saw him from afar, and they were filled with sorrow and amazement; and they sent those of their number who were filled with cunning and craft for to make terms with the invaders, thinking it was the people whom they had robbed. And they came unto the camp of Assyria, and they cast themselves in the dust, and made great lamentation; and Shalmanezzer asked them, saying: Who are ye, and are ye at peace with the great king of Assyria? And the ambassadors of the yellow men were crafty, and they knew not the king of Assyria, but one whose name was Shebinah. And Shebinah was of the Etheopians and he had dwelt in the land of Ninus, and he spake the language of Assyria. And Shebinah said, Lo, thy servants belong to this land which thou seest beyond thee, and we have no quarrel with the king of Assyria; but rather have we been his friends, for did not the people of our land furnish the ancient king Alcad, of Assyria, with horses, when he fought against the king Ninus? and thy servants have ever been on good terms with my lord, the king of Assyria.

And the thing which Shebinah said was even true, and the general of Shalmanezzer remembered hearing the same story read in the presence of the king. And Shalmanezzer asked them, saying: Hast thou seen the people of Gehalehmot come over into this land? and they said, nay, no people have we seen save thee and thy people. And Shalmanezzer was sore vexed and non-plussed. Yet he marveled what had become of the men of Gehalehmot. And Shalmanezzer said unto the yellow men: Now go in peace; I will do thee no

harm, only supply us a little corn and some beeves and some fat sheep, that we may not perish for hunger in the desert, for the king's son Shalmanezer expected to find the produce of the land, that he might buy as his necessities demanded. And the yellow men gave him of their substance; nevertheless, not of a sufficient quantity to last him any length of time; and Shalmanezer made a treaty of peace with the yellow men and turned him about and returned unto the city of Laheiah, for he had not provender wherewith to remain in the plain by the great river. And Shalmanezer left eight thousand men in the city of Laheiah, and at the falling of the leaves he returned unto the land of Assyria. And when he had returned and told unto the king his father, how he had spent the summer, the king Merodach was exceeding angry, and he rent his robe and said, Fool thou art not to have sent messengers in either direction for to see where these villainous people had gone. And Merodach said, How long shall this handful of vagabond people set at naught the great and mighty people of Assyria? And he was minded to cause Shalmanezer to be put to death, but Semai, the daughter of the king, was much beloved by him, and she was ten years old, and she fell on Shalmanezer's neck and said, behold, I will die if he dieth, with him. And the chief captain stood up before the king and told him how that the messengers that Shalmanezer had sent reported how the people had gone thus and so, and that the tracks of the animals were still to be seen when they encamped over against the great river of the north.

And after the king had slept he became mollified in his temper, and he commanded that there be made

ready a larger army for the next year, and he provided himself with better things for the mountains, and Merodach the king sent over when the summer season was on the land, and possessed the land of Gehalehmot, and he set a governor, Meshrodach his son, over the land, and he gave the land in parcels unto the men of Assyria, and made whosoever chose to go up into the land of Gehalehmot a free man save in time of war

And Meshrodach governed the land, and he was wise and humane, and he regretted that the people of Gehalehmot were driven out, but he durst not say aught unto his father of the matter.

So the land of Gehalehmot was possessed by the men of Assyria, and this was done the year that Shalmanezer went up to the land of the yellow men.

Now when Kaiah left the land of Gehalehmot and the city of Laheiah, he sent strong and durable young men unto the crossings of the mountains for to spy out the movements of the men of Assyria; and Kaiah did not suppose that Shalmanezer would come over in the plain after him; and at the time of the latter rains in the valley, the messengers who had followed Shalmanezer for to see what he did, returned unto Kaiah; and Kaiah with his people had then removed unto the land which the king of Mozman had given him; and Kaiah heard what the messengers had said, and he called Algoonah and asked him what he supposed the king of Assyria would do, and Algoonah said, He will surely return and we will be destroyed unless the king Amarah of Mozman helps us, and that I do not desire should be done, for lo he hath been as a brother unto thee and hath given thee the land to dwell in.

So Kaiah was much distressed in his mind, and he

made ready and came up to the king of Mozman, and the kings went into council together.

And Kaiah told unto Amarah what his messenger said, and Kaiah said further, Lo, I will draw thee into an unnecessary war and be the cause of the killing of many of the people of Mozman ; and Amarah said, Lo thy people are as my people, and thy war is my war, I will make ready and we will smite the king of Assyria, so that he perish from the earth ; and the two kings consulted long together, and Kaiah said, I would that thou speakest with my prime minister, even Algoonah, for he is a youth of great wisdom, and he hath never been wrong ; and Algoonah was called, and when he was come into the presence of the kings, he bowed himself and said, Long live the kings Kaiah and Amarah ; and Amarah said, We have desired to consult thee in reference to the invasion of the land by the king of Assyria next year. And the matter was all laid before Algoonah, and he stood up and said, It is not good for us to remain here, as we will cause thee and thy people an unnecessary war, and moreover, I am well acquainted with Merodach king of Assyria, and know his temper and his mind, and I know that he will drive us from the earth if he calleth all the people of Assyria to do it. And further, I know the king and the people of Assyria to be a brave and mighty nation, and the people of Assyria are like the stars for multitude, and their wealth is very great ; and thou art now in peace, and thy people live around thee in happiness, and lo, if we war against the men of Assyria, then thy people will be slain, and trouble and lamentations will fill the land of Mozman . and much further did Algoonah say.

And the conference waxed long and warm, for Amarah desired not for the people of Gehalehmot to leave him, and he said he would have sufficient cause for war if Merodach invaded his country. And Servinus, he that was very cunning stood without, and he desired to speak with Algoonah.

And Algoonah brought Servinus before the kings.

And Servinus bowed himself unto the ground, and Kaiah smiled upon him and said, Speak my son what is on thy mind. And Servinus smiled very craftily, and said, Let ambassadors meet the army of king Merodach on the borders of the land of Mozman, and let them ask why come ye with armies into this the land of Mozman; With the king hast thou a quarrel? And if he answereth we seek the people of Gehalehmot, let answer be made, we know not such people; go hence in peace and seek not to provoke our king to avenge thee for coming into this the land of Mozman without cause; and if he answer, lo, I enter thy land to seek these people, let the armies move against him, and let my lords, the kings of the land of Mozman and of Gehalehmot, make ready against such peradventure.

And when Servinus had ceased speaking, Amarah said, What the fellow saith, is very good, thus let us do. And Algoonah and Kaiah reasoned long, yet the king of Mozman prevailed over them, and Kaiah consented to abide the issue of a war in the land of Mozman, even as Servinus had advised.

And Kaiah and Algoonah came into the land where the people of Gehalehmot were, and they made preparations for war; and Amarah sent unto all the provinces of Mozman saying, Lo, the great king of Assyria cometh over at the summer of next year for to invade

the land of Mozman. Make ready, so and so many armed men to meet him; and they made ready and came unto the great city of king Amarah, and encamped around it. And Servinus was made a chief man in the army of king Amarah, for so Amarah had desired it of Kaiah; and the preparations went forward in great haste for to meet the men of Assyria.

Now the young men of the land of Mozman came down unto the people of Gehalehmot for to see them, and there were those who were very comely and fair of the women of Gehalehmot, both virgins and those who were widows by reason of the battle of the city of Laheiah, and the young men of Mozman were betrothed unto the daughters of the men of Gehalehmot, and it pleased Amarah, and he made treaty with Kaiah that all young men of Mozman who should marry the women of Gelalehmot, should be of the men of Gehalehmot, and the youths of Gehalehmot who should marry of the daughters of Mozman, should be of the people of Mozman, and so it was. So the men of Mozman and Gehalehmot made ready for war, and Amarah spake unto Kaiah saying:

Thy commander in chief even Algoonah is a young man of great mind, let us cause him to be sent over the plain for to meet the men of Assyria if it become necessary to go into battle, and Kaiah said even as thou desirest it shall be done. And Kaiah and Amarah made a strong wall over against the river for to defend the land of Mozman against the men of Assyria, *and lo, the wall standeth unto this day on the borders of the land of Mozman.*

And Amarah sat in the great hall of judgment for to judge the people of Mozman, and Kaiah sat beside him

for to assist him in his judgment ; and there came a matter before the king which was of little import, but the magistrates could not decide, so it came unto the king, and the matter was this :

On a certain day, behold, there were two cows together, and both were with young, and both cast their calves at the same time, and one calf was dead ; and shortly there came the separate owners of the cows, and one said the calf that liveth is mine, and the other said, lo, it is mine ; so they quarreled together, and they could not agree, and the kings were sore puzzled, and they could not decide justly ; and Servinus stood in the audience and smiled craftily, and Amarah spoke to him, and said :

Come, I pray thee, up hither.

And the king told the matter unto Servinus, and he bowed himself, and said :

Let my lords, the kings, cause the calf to be shut up with the two cows, and the cow which the calf belongeth to will lick it with affection.

And the people who heard it laughed, and the kings laughed, and said :

Thy craft is greater than the wisdom of the kings.

And on the close of the sitting for judgment, as the kings sat eating, Kaiah told Amarah how the great council had made a book of laws for the people of Gehalehmot, and the curiosity of the king, Amarah, was greatly excited, and he desired that he might see the laws, if expedient ; and Kaiah sent Algoonah with the laws for the king Amarah to hear. And Amarah sat upon his throne, and he commanded that a herald read the laws of the men of Gehalehmot, and it was done. And when the king had heard the laws, he marveled

greatly at the wisdom and justice thereof, and he commanded that the laws be copied and placed with the laws of the land of Mozman, and it was done.

And when the king, Amarah, lay upon his bed, he was bereft of sleep by reason of meditating on the laws of the people of Gehalehmot: and he said unto himself, there is great wisdom in these laws and regulations of the people of Gehalehmot. Nevertheless, my brother, Kaiah, hath not selected who shall be king after him. And the thought troubled Amarah so greatly that he called his secretary in the middle of the night, and caused him to write unto Kaiah concerning the matter, and at the morning he sent a messenger unto Kaiah.

And Kaiah read the letter, and his mind was filled with astonishment to find he had forgotten so important a matter, and he said:

I will consult my brother Amarah before I make such selection.

So at the mid-winter feasts of the people of Gehalehmot, Kaiah sent a chariot, with two hundred horsemen, and wrote unto Amarah, saying, Come down into our land and witness the feasts of the men of Gehalehmot.

So Amarah consented, and he came down with his wife, and his sons and daughters, for to witness the mid-winter feasts of the people. And Kaiah set out to meet him on the way, and he brought him to the tent of the king, and there was rejoicing among the people. And after the feast was over, Kaiah took the king, Amarah, and brought him unto a private place, and said:

The matter which thou didst write to me of was for-

gotten by me, and I have brought thee down thither that I might consult with thee on this thing.

And Amarah said :

Thou hast not sons, only daughters. Thou must select from the people of Gehalehmot some one for wisdom and strength ; and who is there among all the people who is like unto Algoonah?

And Kaiah was of the same mind. So after they had thus consulted, they called Algoonah and told him of what they had decided, and Algoonah said unto Kaiah :

My father, as thou knowest, died when I was in my infancy, and thou, Kaiah, hast been my father since. And the voice of Algoonah was choked for reason of weeping, for he said, If I be king then wilt thou be dead.

And Kaiah kissed him and sent him out. And when it was told to the people there was a great shout set up, saying :

Long live Algoonah, the pride, and hope, and strength of all the people of Gehalehmot.

And the preparations for war went on all over the land of Mozman, so that from one end of the land unto the other there was heard nothing but the orders for war, and the sound of the hammers of the smiths and armorers.

And Kinar, the cunning workman, was not idle, and he made curious engines of war, such as was never seen on earth at any time. And the time wore away apace, and the time of the singing of birds was at hand, and on a certain day Servinus came into the presence of the king Amarah and bowed himself, and said, Thy brother, the king Kaiah, knoweth that there is a

narrow place in the mountains where the king of Assyria must needs pass through ; cause men to be sent there that they may resist him, and turn him again unto his own land. And Amarah said, I will consult with the king Kaiah concerning this matter.

And Merodach, the king of Assyria, made preparations, and when the winter was gone he sent Shalmanezer again, and told him that unless he drove the people of Gehalehmot from the earth, that he would most surely put him to death.

And Shalmanezer came up unto the land of Gehalehmot and encamped over against the city of Laheiah ; and he was making ready to cross over and smite the men of Gehalehmot when a messenger came in great haste, saying : Thy father, even Merodach the king, hath died, and the people have made thee king of Assyria. And Shalmanezer put on mourning, and the army of Assyria mourned for the space of thirty days. And Shalmanezer consulted within himself, saying, What profiteth me if I go against these people ; lo, I have their land, and they will trouble me no longer, nor will Algoonah ; for he is gone from the land.

So Shalmanezer called back the army of Assyria, and he went unto his own land ; and Shalmanezer began to reign on the throne of his father Merodach, and he reigned forty and eight years in the land of Assyria.

CHAPTER IX.

So Shalmanezzer, the king of Assyria, went into his own country and withdrew his army from the city of Laheiah, save forty score, who kept the city.

And Meshrodach, his brother, reigned over the land of Gehalehmot.

Now Kaiah and the king of Mozman sent Algoonah with an hundred thousand men for to spy out the king of Assyria; and Algoonah came unto the crossing of the mountains which is over against the city of Laheiah.

And he sent Servinus with a picked band of men for to go over and see what the men of Assyria did; and Servinus bid the men stand; and he cast his clothing off and dressed him in rags, and came unto the city of Laheiah, and he drew near the gates of the city, and the guard which stood over the gate of the city saw him come on, and the guard said, Who art thou? and he said, Thy servant is a herdsman which dwelleth in the mountains; and lo, the wild beasts have killed my flocks and herds, and thy servant hath wandered starving in the mountains; give, I pray thee, me to eat, for I perish with hunger. And the guard sent him with a soldier into the presence of the ruler of the city; and the ruler said, Art thou one of the people of Gehalehmot? And Servinus said, Nay, verily I am of the outskirts of the kingdom of Assyria. And the ruler believed him, for he spoke the language of the

men of Assyria, and the ruler sent him unto Meshrodach, the Governor, and Meshrodach questioned him, but could get no further answer, neither did he cross himself in his speech. So Meshrodach sent him unto the fig tree dressers for to give him employment; and Servinus wrought with the dressers of the fig trees. And he could get no occasion for to leave, for he saw that the king's men watched him closely; and he heard of the conversation of the men what had transpired, and he sought opportunity to go thence; and at last he got a man who went up to the city of Laheiah for implements of his trade to take him with him, and Servinus escaped over the mountains, and he went in haste unto Algoonah and told him of the death of Merodach, and that Shalmanezzer was king in his stead, and that Shalmanezzer had called the army back from following after the men of Gehalehmot; and Algoonah straightway went back unto the land of Mozman and told Kaiah and Amarah, the kings, of the tidings, and they caused proclamation to be made all over the land of Mozman; and there was great rejoicing among all the people on that account; and all the soldiers, save those who belonged to the army of peace, returned unto his own place; and it was the time of casting seed into the earth, and the men of Gehalehmot went to the business of husbandry, and they did sow every man to his ability, and the flocks and herds of the people covered the valley.

And on a certain day, Amarah sent unto Kaiah, saying: Let us meet and form a treaty of peace between my people and thine; and Kaiah was agreed thereto.

So the kings met in council and formed a treaty, and the tenor thereof was as follows :

The men of Gehalehmot shall possess the valley from where the two valleys meet, even unto the great mound which is over against the city of Arbulah ; and the men of Gehalehmot shall be a free people, from all demands of the king of Mozman, save in necessary war, and on there being necessary war in the land of Mozman, then shall the men of Gehalehmot pay unto the treasury of the land of Mozman one-tenth of all the increase of the land ; and the men of Mozman who shall be married unto the daughters of the people of Gehalehmot shall be of the men of Gehalehmot, and likewise all the men of Gehalehmot who shall take to wife of the daughters of Mozman shall be of the men of Mozman ; and the men of Mozman shall assist the men of Gehalehmot in any war necessary unto the well-being of the people of Gehalehmot ; and any man having aught against the people of Gehalehmot shall leave the matter unto the magistrates and judges of Gehalehmot ; and if their judgment be unjust then shall the king of Gehalehmot consider the matter, and then do justice. And much more was written in the treaty. And Amarah made a writing of parchment with his signet thereon, and gave unto Kaiah.

And Kaiah called men chosen for wisdom, to meet other men chosen for wisdom of the land of Mozman, for to consider other matters of import. And the wise men met, and they recommended that there be built an highway from the great city of Mozman, even unto the great city of the men of Gehalehmot. And it pleased the kings, and they gave command that the highway be built, and that the expense thereof should

fall on the people of Mozman and Gehalehmot alike ; and Kinar, the cunning workman, was made the chief workman of the highway.

And it was begun immediately ; and the plan thereof was this :

The highway was cast up four cubits, and it was twenty-five cubits wide, and the top was paved with stones to the depth of a cubit and a half.

So the work went on, and there was peace in all the land of Mozman.

And the men of Gehalehmot were expert in the making of cheese, and the people of Gehalehmot sent their cheese into the land of Mozman, and they made great gain thereof.

And the summer drew on apace. And the time of harvest was at hand. So, after a few days the song of the reapers of the harvest was heard from one end of the land to the other, and the harvest of the people of Gehalehmot was very great, so that the like thereof was never seen upon the earth even to this day.

And Kaiah laid the foundations of his chief city even where the two rivers met, and he builded him a palace and a temple there.

When king Amarah had judgment, he sent unto Kaiah to assist him in his judgment, and this he did continually, and the people of Mozman respected and loved Kaiah, even as they did their own king.

And a treaty was made between the kings, so that Amarah's son Kamillah was married unto the daughter of Kaiah, and at the wedding feast there was great merriment and festivity ; and the work on the highway was carried on apace, and the distance was four score furlongs.

And Kaiah builded a city, and it was called the city of Kaiah, and the men of Gehalehmot builded themselves houses, and the land prospered greatly.

And they abode in the land three years, and the land of Toridel which was far off on the borders of the land of Mozman, laid cause of war against the people of Mozman.

The men of Toridel had many slaves, and they were a barbarous people, and they did greatly mistreat their slaves.

And the slaves came over into the land of Mozman, and they were well treated, and became as the men of Mozman.

And the King of Toridel sent down emissaries, saying, return our slaves or worse things shall befall thee. And the anger of Amarah was raised against the king of Toridel.

And he sent unto Kaiah to consult with him ; and he would not return the slaves unto the king of Toridel, and the messengers returned unto their own land, and Amarah made ready for war ; and Algoonah came with an hundred thousand men of Gehalehmot for to assist the king of Mozman.

And Amarah made ready six score thousand men, and sent them under Jurba his great general, for to meet the men of Toridel if they should come unto the land of Mozman. And they did journey for the space of sixteen days and came unto the city of Kama, which is on the borders of the land of Mozman, over against the land of Toridel, and they encamped around about the city of Kama, and cast up walls and mounds for defence.

Now the king of Toridel was very angry when the messengers returned, and he sent unto the governors and chief captains for to make ready for to go to war against the land of Mozman.

The men of Toridel were not as the men of Mozman and of Gehalehmot, but they were of short stature, and very crafty and cruel in their disposition, and they made ready an exceeding great army, and came down for to overrun the country of Mozman.

And the men of Toridel were in the custom of fighting on horseback, and they were exceedingly hard to conquer, by reason of the speed of their movements, and messengers came unto the king of Toridel, who commanded the army in person, saying the men of Mozman had encamped within the city of Kama. And the king said, we cannot war as the king of Mozman doth; let us get around behind him, and penetrate into the land and burn their defenceless cities, and put the inhabitants to the sword.

Now Algoonah had a great band of chosen horsemen, and they were armed with the expert weapons which Kinar had made; and Algoonah had requested the great general to send spies abroad, and he did so; and the spies returned in haste, saying:

Lo, the men of Toridel penetrate into the land twenty furlongs to the north.

And it was night, and the chief captain commanded Algoonah that he go straight way and fall upon them. And Algoonah went forth in haste, with his chosen men on horseback, and he rode for the space of a day and a night, and he came upon the men of Toridel encamped against a city of Mozman; and it was night, and the men of Toridel slept intending to fall upon the

city in the morning. And the men of Algoonah wore a blue vestment as was the fashion of the men of Gehalehmot, and every man had a brand of fire, and they fell upon the men of Toridel, and the men of Toridel fled in dismay. And Algoonah ceased not to drive them until they came into their own land; and he returned unto the city of Kama, and requested the great general that he go into the land of Toridel and lay it waste.

And when the men of Algoonah had sufficiently rested, the chief general of the men of Mozman got him up with his army and moved into the land of Toridel; and he came unto the river which is between the land of Toridel and the land of Mozman; and he crossed the river, and all the army crossed over after him. And word was brought unto the king of Toridel, saying:

Behold! the men of Mozman have crossed over into the land, and they march against thee.

And the king of Toridel made ready all his people, and marched unto the face of the general of Mozman. Now the chief general of Mozman had left Algoonah with the men from the people of Gehalehmot, saying:

Stay thou in this city of Kama and keep it, for thou hast done sufficient for thee.

So Algoonah stayed and kept the city.

And the king of Toridel came to meet the men of Mozman, and they came face to face in the valley of Kamleh, which is in the land of Toridel.

And they went not to battle, for the day was spent; but each rested in his place until the morrow.

So, when the sun had risen, the army of Toridel like

unto the leaves of the trees in number, formed in two wings, and encompassed the men of Mozman.

And the great general of Mozman was a mighty man of war, and his soul enkindled within him, and he made his army into four divisions ; one facing the east, one facing the west, one facing the south and one facing the north. And the men of Toridel rode horses, and were expert with the bow and javelin. And there were among the men of Mozman, those who slang stones to a great distance ; and the men of Toridel knew it not. And as they came near, the slingers threw stones and hit them in their foreheads, and the men of Toridel fell as dead.

And the men of Mozman set up a shout, which did terrify the horses of the men of Toridel, and they threw their riders and fled over the great plain ; and the men of Mozman fell upon the men of Toridel, and their slaughter was very great.

Now the king of Toridel rode in a great chariot of gold, of silver and of ivory, and the ensign of the people of Toridel was carried before the king ; and his people surrounded him and fought bravely ; but, the men of Mozman encompassed them about ; and smote them with great fury ; and the king of Toridel could not flee by reason of the men of Mozman.

And the chief general was a large and valorous man, and he rode upon a great black horse, and he levelled a spear and made as if he would thrust it through the king ; and one who was of the men of Toridel received the spear into his body and fell to the ground. And the king of Toridel gave himself into the hands of the men of Mozman. And he wanted to make treaty with the chief general ; and the chief general caused the

fighting to cease, and he called back his people from pursuing after the men of Toridel. And the chief general said unto the king, I cannot make a treaty with thee until I consult the chief general of the men of Gehalehmot, who assisted me in this war.

So he took the king, and his chariot, and his standard, and his chief captains, and brought them unto the city of Kama, where Algoonah was.

And Algoonah and the chief general of the land of Mozman held a long consultation, and they made terms with the king of Toridel, as followeth :

That the king of Toridel should return unto his own land, and possess it, as ever his fathers had done ; that he should pay unto the kings of Gehalehmot and Mozman the cost of the war, and that he should no more go to war without the consent of the kings of Gehalehmot and Mozman ; and that the slaves who should come over and reach the city of Kama should be free ; and all the stuff of the king of Toridel was returned unto him, and they suffered him to return unto his own land ; and the men of Gehalehmot and of Mozman returned unto their places. And there was great rejoicing all over the land, albeit, there was much sorrow for those who were slain. And the people of Gehalehmot waxed rich, and their flocks and herds were very numerous, and the valley occupied by them was not surpassed in all the land of Mozman for richness ; and the people had abode there for eight years.

The great highway between the chief city of Mozman and the city of Kaiah was completed the second year ; and the travel thereon was very great, both of beasts of burden and chariots, and horsemen ; and

even also the land of Mozman prospered greatly, inso-much that merchants came from all the other nations ; and traded with the men of Mozman and Gehalehmot.

Now, Servinus was of a subtle and crafty disposition, and he secretly hated Algoonah and Kaiah, and he secretly made unto himself friends of the people, that he might be made king when Kaiah was dead ; and the matter was kept secret ; nevertheless, a maid who was of Algoonah's household told the wife of Algoonah, of the matter ; and on a certain night the wife of Algoonah told him of the matter. So Algoonah pondered over the matter, and made it known unto Kaiah, and Kaiah told the king Amarah. So at the time of the harvest in the eighth year of the sojourn of the people in the land of Mozman, Servinus sought opportunity, as Algoonah entered the court of the temple early in the morning, and laid in wait for to kill him. And the friends of Servinus were made ready, to the number of five hundred, for to make him king. And the night previous the wife of Algoonah had a melancholy dream, and when Algoonah arose to go into the temple she told him thereof. And it impressed the mind of Algoonah, and he was on his guard, and he saw Servinus crouching in the shadow of the door ; and Algoonah had a sword in his robe ; and Servinus cast a javelin at Algoonah, and he sprang aside and received no hurt. And Servinus was forsaken of his courage and fled ; and Algoonah had him taken and cast into prison. And the people were all amazed, and said, he shall surely die as a dog dieth.

But Servinus escaped and got his friends, who were also afraid, and fled into the land of Gehalehmot, even the land where Meshrodach was governor.

And Meshrodach was distrustful of them, albeit, Servinus told a plausible story; and Meshrodach said, depart hence, lest evil will befall thee.

And Servinus fled to the westward, for he feared the men of Assyria. And he came unto the great sea, that lieth to the westward, and he stopped in the land of Ghamis, and builded the city of Salem, *which standeth even unto this day.*

And after Servinus left, the king Kaiah, was of heavy spirit, and he eat not, neither did he sleep, for reason of the rebellion of Servinus, and the men which he drew off with him. Algoonah cheered up the king and said, evil were the works of Servinus from the beginning, and all his craft lay in fraud and lying, consider thyself fortunate that he is gone.

And the friendship between Kaiah and Amarah waxed not cold; but was better from year to year, and at the end of the ninth year of the sojourn of the people of Gehalehmot, in the valley given them by the king of Mozman, lo, a messenger came in haste unto Kaiah, saying, Lo, the king even Amarah is nigh unto death, and he desired thee to come quickly.

And Kaiah got him up in haste, and came unto the palace of Amarah; and he lay as it were dead. And when Kaiah entered, Amarah raised him up and smiled on Kaiah, and said:

These many years ye have been as my brother, lo, I now go as my fathers went. I desire that thou place the crown of the kingdom of Mozman on the head of my son Aristoblah, and proclaim him king before the people, and Kaiah did so immediately, and Amarah died.

So Aristoblah sat on the throne of his father, Amarah, and all the people of Mozman and Gehalehmot mourned for Amarah forty days.

CHAPTER X.

So Aristoblah sat on the throne of his father Amarah ; and the land was filled with mourning, from one end even unto the other.

The king Amarah, had ruled the land of Mozman sixty years, being eighty years old when he died ; and he ruled with great wisdom and justice, and the people loved Amarah greatly, for the land had prospered very much in his reign.

Now Aristoblah was twenty and three years old when he began to reign, and he was of a weak mind, and treacherous disposition ; and one, Thesaura, was his wife, and she was cunning and cruel.

The king Kaiah, was filled with great sorrow when Amarah died ; and he went unto his house and shut himself up, and did neither eat or drink, save when pressed by his household.

Now when Amarah had been dead a year, Aristoblah sent unto Kaiah, saying :

These ten years hast thou possessed the valley at the meeting of the two rivers, and thou hast paid no tribute. Behold, my tax gatherer cometh ; and make thou ready to pay me a tenth part of thy increase since thou entered the land.

And Algoonah met the messenger, and when he had heard the import of the message, he was filled with indignation ; and he went in unto Kaiah and told him

gently what the young king desired ; and Kaiah was as a dead man, and smote upon his breast, and said :

Would that I had died with my brother, even Amarah ; then would not my days have been full of sorrow, and peace would not have departed from me.

And long did he mourn, by reason of the treachery of the young king Aristoblah.

Now this was at the spring time, when the young fig tree first shooteth forth her leaves ; so Algoonah called the grand council of the people together, and stood up and said :

This day hath the young king of Mozman dealt with treachery and cruelty. Behold the demand that he maketh. Consider what we shall do.

And the council deliberated much, and they said :

Had we not better conciliate the young king, and pay him what he desireth.

And Algoonah spake with indignation, saying :

Nay, we will not pay him so much as one farthing. Lo, our king, Kaiah, made a treaty of peace and friendship with Amarah, the king, that we should possess the land without tribute through all coming time.

We will depart hence. See, the world lieth before us, and we will go out from this land and go unto the uttermost parts of the earth before we will pay tribute unto this king, the foolish Aristoblah.

And the council agreed thereto. And Algoonah sent forth proclamation to the men of Gehalehmot, saying :

Let no man cast seed into the earth, neither plant the fig tree, or build more houses ; but let every one make himself ready to depart hence.

Now there were many that were of the people of

Mozman, by reason of the treaty made by the kings, Amarah and Kaiah; so they hated the new king of Mozman, and agreed upon the removal.

The young king caused the demand to be made unto Kaiah, by reason of the importunities of his wife, Thesaura, and she gave him no rest day or night, saying:

Lay heavy burdens on this vagabond people thy father admitted into the land. Lo, they have grown rich by reason of having the most fertile and comely part of thy land, and they have lived on the fatness of the land these ten years.

So Aristoblah did as she demanded, and the decree went forth that the men of Gehalehmot should pay a tenth of their increase since they entered the land of Mozman; and the tax gatherers went down unto the land of the people of Gehalehmot for to tax the people. And they were low fellows, for the men of Mozman, who were of good disposition, still loved the people of Gehalehmot, by reason of their respect unto the good king Amarah, and no one of any repute would be tax gatherer.

And Algoonah made all the people ready, and at the rising of the new moon he went forth toward the south-eastward, even toward the land of Toridel; and the people took their flocks and herds, their substance and all things sufficient, and necessary for three years provender.

And they travelled along, until the going down of the new moon, even twenty nine days; and the order of the journey was as follows:

First, came Algoonah, then the king and his wife and children, then an hundred thousand armed men,

then the people with their wives and little ones, then the flocks and herds, with the shepherds and shearers, then the household stuff on beasts of burden, and in chariots cunningly devised by Kinar, and lastly the remainder of the men of Gehalehmot, armed and ready for battle, so they journeyed down toward the land of Toridel.

And the tax gatherers of Aristoblah returned in haste, saying, this people whom thou sendest us to lay tribute on, hath departed from the land, even toward the southeastward ; and the wife of Aristoblah, wrought him heavily, saying, get thee up, and pursue this people, for they have much fine gold, and silver, and precious stones, and fine clothing, besides flocks and herds ; and she gave him no rest.

So the king sent unto his chief general, who was also with Algoonah, at the time of the war in the land of Toridel, and he told him to make ready to go after the people of Gehalehmot.

And the chief general began to reason with the king ; but the king grew wroth and cast him into a dungeon.

And when it was gone forth among the people, that the chief general was cast into prison, they were filled with sorrow ; and they loved the chief general ; and the people came, and in the night, beat down the dungeon.

And the chief general came forth, and went in haste unto the men of Gehalehmot, and abode with them, from that time henceforth.

And Aristoblah took a dissolute, evil minded young fellow, and made him chief general.

And Aristoblah got his army, and went forth to pursue the men of Gehalehmot, and he came down toward the land of Toridel, whither the people had gone.

So Algoonah crossed the river, and came unto the land of Toridel, and he encamped two days journey in the land, and sent messengers unto the king of Toridel, saying, We are a people who are herdsmen, and we desire to cross thy land, even to the southeastward; and when the messengers had come unto the king he received them civilly, for he was a generous young king, and told the men that he would send his lord chamberlain, even his brother, for to see the people; so the lord chamberlain came down, and he talked with Kaiah and Algoonah, for he spake the speech of the land of Mozman.

The lord chamberlain asked them, Art thou of the land of Mozman? and Algoonah told them the truth; and the lord chamberlain was distrustful; nevertheless, he said, see that thou do the land no hurt, and the way shall be open to thee.

And the lord chamberlain went his way, even to the city of the king of Toridel; so the king made proclamation, saying: A shepherd people passeth through the land; let no man do them hurt, save in defence of his life or property. And Algoonah got him up with all his people, and journeyed to the southeastward for the space of four months; and they came to where there were exceeding high mountains, and the pasturage was good, for the land was of a warm climate, so the people built houses, and the flocks and herds covered the hills. Now in that land there lived men who were exceeding wild and uncouth, and shaved not, neither wore they any clothing, and their herds were

horses, goats and asses ; and the wild men were filled with terror at the sight of the people, and they fled in great alarm.

Now, Aristoblah got him out of his city and pursued after the people of Gehalehmot. Guyges, of the men of Gehalehmot, he who was merry maker unto the king of Assyria, had married of the daughters of Mozman, and was one of the men of Mozman by reason of the treaty, and he was captain of a host in the army of Mozman, and he rode before the king ; and when the army of Mozman had come unto the river over against the land of Toridel, Guyges raised himself in his saddle and cast a javelin at the king Aristoblah, and the javelin entered the king's heart, and he fell into the chariot and gave up the ghost ; and Guyges lifted up his voice and said, so dieth the treacherous and cruel tyrant ; and there was great commotion among the army. And Guyges went in haste and fled across the land of Toridel, and he saw where the people had crossed the land ; and he went in safety, for the people of Toridel feared the men of Gehalehmot, and they were willing to let them pass in peace.

And the army of Mozman returned to their own land, and Jabura, the king's brother, was king in his stead ; and Jabura put the wife of Aristoblah to the sword, because he knew she was filled with evil. Jabura was like unto his father Amarah, and he sent for the people of Gehalehmot, to return and possess the valley given them by his father, Amarah, but his emissaries were turned back by the men of Toridel, and he let the matter rest. Now the valley of the people of Gehalehmot was not inhabited ; and the cities and

houses, the walls and mounds thereof, were left standing in the valley, *and it has not been the abode of man, even to this day.* Jabura, the king, was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he sat upon the throne of his father, Amarah, seventy and three years; and he did that which was just and right. And the people of Mozman, were they not a notable people?

Now Algoonah commanded that the people build no houses, only proper for their present necessities, for he intended not to abide in that land. Now Kaiah waxed old and feeble by reason of sorrow, and his head was bowed, neither did he speak unless one spake unto him; and Algoonah was troubled by reason of the sorrow of Kaiah, and that he would not be comforted.

So Guyges left his wife in the land of Mozman, and went unto the people of Gehalehmot; and when he was come thither he told Algoonah what he had done. And Algoonah was greatly amazed at the doings of Guyges; and he rebuked Guyges for his rash conduct. So Guyges fell on the ground and implored the favor of Algoonah.

In the land where the people of Gehalehmot stayed, the climate was gentle, and the flocks and herds thrive on the pasturage, for there was no severe weather; and at the time of the spring Algoonah made the people ready, and they journeyed even in the same order that they did when they came out of the land of Mozman. And at the end of the tenth year from the time the people came into the land of Mozman, they departed southward, to find a land where they might stay and abide forever.

So they came to where the great river of the east crossed through the mountains, and the people went

through and encamped on the other side. And the land on the other side was the land of Katharia; and it was a strange and peculiar country; and they came to where the pasturage was good, and the people did stop, for they were weary, and spent, with their journey. And the land of Katharia had trees of strange and goodly fruit; and the people did eat of the fruit of the land.

Moreover, the men of the land of Katharia were a peculiar people, and their land was of a vast and marvelous extent; and they lived in cities, and tilled the earth.

At the time the people of Gehalehmot entered the land of Katharia it was the time of the falling of the leaves in the land of Assyria and of Gehalehmot; and it was told the governor of the people that a strange people had come into the land.

The great king of Katharia lived two years' journey to the eastward, and all the land was his, but the country was ruled by governors; every province had its own governor; and the governor sent down, and his emissaries could not speak with the people. So the chief emissary took an arrow and gave it to Algoonah; and Algoonah brake the arrow and threw it away, and the emissaries smiled and took their leave. And it was told the governor, and he said these men came not for war and conquest. Lo, their children and women are with them. Let them remain in safety.

And Algoonah was minded to remain there for the space of three months, and then depart unto the land where the people might abide through all coming time.

So the governor sent youths for to learn the language of the strange invaders, for to see what they desired. And the youths came down, and Algoonah set teachers over them, and they learned the speech of Gehalehmot. And the youth of Gehalehmot learned the speech of Katharia. And the governor was much astonished when he heard the history of the men of Gehalehmot, and told the messengers of Algoonah that he could pass through the land of Katharia, even to the mighty sea of the east, where he could abide on certain islands which were near the land.

And Kaiah grew old and stricken of years, and his strength abated, and he lay him down and could not rise; and he sent unto Algoonah saying, Come hither I pray thee, with the elder men of the people.

And it was done even as Kaiah commanded, and Kaiah said unto Algoonah, and to the elders of the people, Lo, my days on earth are ended, the strong man by reason of age and sorrow, lieth down and riseth not, this day will Kaiah be numbered with the dead; take the blue robe of the kings of Gehalehmot and cast it on Algoonah, and set the golden crown of Kaiah upon his head, and let the patriarch of the people pour out an horn of oil before him, and let him be proclaimed king before the people. And the people quickly assembled, and Kaiah was carried forth in his bed for to look at the people again, and to see Algoonah made king. And Algoonah was made king in presence of all the people. And Kaiah called Guyges, and said, Thy name shall be no more Guyges, but Jeshurim, for that savoreth of the land of Assyria; and Kaiah was taken back unto his chamber, and he bid Algoonah to give Jeshurim the sword and hemlet of

the commander in chief of the men of Gehalehmot, and it was done. And Kaiah said, Behold, I die and go unto my fathers; let my ashes be taken into whatsoever land thou sojourneth in. And the spirit of futurity came over Kaiah, and his reason returned, and he sat up and said:

Lo, I see a people mighty in wisdom and conquest; and the men of all lands, and of all nations, and all kindreds, and all time shall look in wonder and astonishment at the work of their hands; and they shall be a people wondrous in cunning, and shall cast their influence on the nations of the world, even unto the latest generations; and they shall come unto a land goodly and wide; and the land shall come to be of the mightiest nations of the earth; all men shall run thither, and the world shall be filled with astonishment at the people.

And Kaiah lay him down, and called Algoonah, and said, remember the last words of Kaiah; Do justice, forsake not truth, and be a father unto the people, even as I have been a father unto thee. So Kaiah closed his eyes and died; and all the years of Kaiah, were ninety and four.

CHAPTER XI.

So Kaiah died, and all the people mourned with great lamentation for him.

And Algoonah cast off his kingly robe, and put on a garment of mourning, and of rags ; and they laid Kaiah in a coffin of fine wood, and precious, even sandal wood, and a plate of gold was thereon.

And the body of Kaiah was placed in a tent of fine cloth. Then Algoonah called the people together, and after he had wept a long while, he stood up before the people and spake, saying :

As the leaf falleth in her fullness of time, and the water faileth by reason of the heat of summer ; so man lieth down, and riseth no more forever ; the years come and pass away again, and he is no more where we were wont to behold him. The heart of man is filled with sorrow and woe, even from the beginning, until the rest cometh, even the long sleep of death, from which he never awaketh.

O my people, this is a day of blackness ; the sun riseth and lighteth, and warmeth the land ; and the heat and light thereof, driveth not away the gloom that rests upon us.

We are as the herds of the valley when the herdsman is taken away.

We look upon the throne of Kaiah ; and he is not there.

When our council meeteth, we behold him not. We listen for the voice that was our guidance and comfort for long years, and we hear it no more. Our father is gone from us ; and behold we go forth in sorrow, and he leadeth us not.

But, he lieth cold and motionless before us. The sharp sound of the rising conflict will not awaken him from the sleep of death ; the wails of our women and little ones, arouse him not. When did the cry of sorrow enter the ear of Kaiah, and he heeded it not ; when did the sorrowing seek him, and find not solace. Lo, the good die not ; the great and beautiful life of Kaiah liveth on, and will live on to the latest generations.

And we turn from the contemplation of our sorrow to the grand deeds of a noble life.

When the men of Gehalehmot would seek to instruct their youth in the way of wisdom and goodness, they will point to the history of Kaiah, and say, behold the good and perfect man. Walk ye after him. Rest beloved father ; thy memory shall be kept, while one of thy people remaineth upon the earth. Rest, rest ; thy warfare and pilgrimage are at an end, and the blessings of all generations followeth thee forever.

And when Algoonah had made an end of speaking, lo, all the people broke forth in wailing and lamentations, such as never hath been heard since ; and all the people sat in mourning for forty days, neither ate or drank, save bread and water ; and they mended neither, shaved themselves nor dress their heads, until the time of mourning was past. And at the end of forty days the time of mourning was past, and Algoonah made proclamation, saying, This people shall no more be

called the people of Gehalehmot, but the people of Kaiah, until the earth cometh to an end ; and the proclamation was observed by all the people.

The men of Katharia looked in wonder on the men of Kaiah, for their mourning was very great. And the men of Katharia were a peculiar people, and their land was of great extent, and they had highways from one end of the land even unto the other ; and the merchants of Katharia came unto the westward, even unto the land of Arabia, for spices, and for gold and precious stones, fine brass and clothing ; also for birds of rare and curious plumage, which were kept in their houses. And the traffic was by means of camels and asses and horses ; and they rested not, but came and went continually ; and the great king of Katharia lived over against the great sea of the eastward ; and his proclamations went forth unto the utmost parts of the land, and the people did homage to him. And Algoonah asked permission of the governor of the province to pass on through the land, for the three months he intended to remain hastened to their close. And the governor said, go in peace, only hurt thou not the land or do mischief on the way. And at the end of the elevènth year from the time the men of Kaiah entered the land of Mozman, Algoonah caused the people to march, even in the same order that they left the land of Mozman, And they journeyed toward the eastward by way of the mountains, even toward the great city of the king of Katharia. And the people drove their flocks and herds, and came for the space of four months, and encamped by the great river of the east, even the river of the mighty city of the king of Katharia ; and in the fourth month Algoonah rested on a plain

by the great river ; and the province was not the one the people rested in before ; and the governor thereof had heard of the people, and he sent unto them, saying, Peace and plenty be with the shepherd men of the west ; lo, the land is thine until thou art rested from thy journey. And Algoonah sent presents unto the governor, of fine parchment of goat skins, and cheese of the best. And the governor was well pleased, and sent word, saying, On such a day will I come down and see thee ; for the distance was not great from his chief city. And Algoonah made ready, and he sat upon the throne of Kaiah, and wore the blue robe of the people of Kaiah. And the governor rode with an hundred horsemen ; and Algoonah came forth to meet him ; and the governor bowed him to the earth, as was the custom of the men of Katharia, and all the men of the governor did likewise, and fell before Algoonah, for they had never before seen one so magnificently dressed. And Algoonah had him in, and set a feast ; and the governor did eat, and was greatly delighted, inso-much that he lifted himself and swore that he would protect the men of Kaiah from even the great king of Katharia himself. And the governor, whose name was Teh, went his way. And he sent artizans and cunning workmen to learn the arts of the men of Kaiah. And they did learn ; and the men of Kaiah also learned the art of making parchment from the barks of trees and from the grass. Also they learned many other things of great use to them thereafter. And the time came that Algoonah was minded to leave and continue his journey, but Teh sent and said, nay, thou leavest not until I give thee word, for I am pleased to have thee near. Now he had secretly sent a messenger in haste

unto the great and mighty king of Katharia for to entreat him for the people of Kaiah. And the messenger rode apace, and drew unto the city of the great king of Katharia; and there was none could come into the presence of the great king, save his five-and-twenty chamberlains, for to speak unto him, unless the great king first desired to see him. And the messenger went in unto the chief chamberlain, and fell to the earth; and the lord chamberlain said, What desirest thou? And the messenger said, A message from my lord, the governor of Teh. And the lord chamberlain said, Come up thither to-morrow, and I will give thee audience. So the lord chamberlain came unto the presence of the great king, and prostrated himself unto the floor, and was as he were dead; and the king bid him stand and speak. And the lord chamberlain said, A message from my lord, the governor Teh. So the king commanded a herald to read the letter from the governor Teh, and the herald read:

To the most potent and grand lord of earth, child of the moon and stars, the mighty king of Katharia. Let not the anger of the great king be excited against his servant for daring to address him. May thy life be long, and may evil take thine enemies. Lo, at the end of the last month there came a strange and peculiar people unto the province of thy servant. They are of exceeding fairness, and their hair is as the golden light of the sun shining through the mists; and their flocks and herds are very numerous and of strange and peculiar animals; and they are prepared unto battle, with implements of strange manufacture; and their king sitteth on a throne of gold and of ivory; and for beauty of countenance he is like unto the fairest of the

daughters of the king's people. Moreover, this people fleeth from the avenger of blood ; for, lo, I send their history by this messenger.

Now this people are a harmless and good people, and they desire to pass through the land of Katharia for to reside on the islands which are over against the land of Katharia. Let thy servant, Teh, entreat thee that this people pass in peace and safety through thy borders.

And when the great king heard the letter of the governor, Teh, he commanded that the messenger of Teh be brought in immediately, and it was done. And when the messenger came before the king, he was as one dead ; and he fell to the ground for fear of the great king. And the king was in a pleasant mood, and he spake unto the messenger, saying :

Arise, and fear not. Thy king is the father of his people, and hurteth none that doeth no wrong.

And the lord chamberlain asked him, saying :

Where is the history that the governor Teh gave unto thee ?

And the messenger plucked it forth from his bosom, and the king commanded that it be read unto him.

Now Algoonah had told unto the governor Teh the history of his people ; and Teh was so pleased therewith that he caused his scribes to write it. So the history was read before the great king. And when the great king had heard it, his mind was filled with astonishment, so that sleep forsook him ; and he said unto the lord chamberlain :

Let the scribes be quickly brought.

And he bid them to write unto Teh, saying :

Grace and peace unto my faithful and well-beloved

Teh! Command that the strange people pass in safety unto this place; and if any one cast aught in their way let him die miserably.

And the king sealed the letter with his own hand, and put the great seal of the land of Katharia thereon, and bid the messenger return in haste to the governor Teh.

And Algoonah spake unto Jeshurim, and unto the elders of the people, and they thought it best to abide there for a year, as the pasturage was good and the climate was gentle. So the men of Kaiah cast seed into the earth, even as the governor Teh desired; and came, and went, as in their own land; and no man did them hurt.

And the messenger sent by Teh, the governor, returned, and bowed himself unto the ground and gave the letter of the great king into his hand.

Now the messenger had rode in haste, for he was the king's messenger; and he came again at the end of a year. And Teh opened the letter of the king, and read therein; and he sent in haste unto Algoonah, saying, I come on such a day, on matters of great import to thee; and Algoonah made ready to receive him; and he came unto Algoonah. So they went into a secret place, and Algoonah read the letter of the great king, for he had learned the speech and writing of the men of Katharia; and when he had read he gave thanks unto Teh, saying:

Thou hast done us a service; but, thy action was nevertheless hasty. And Teh was glad of the letter, and said unto Algoonah, keep this, and show it unto the governors of the people, as thou journeyest through the land.

So Algoonah called the grand council of the people together, and set the matter before them; and the council determined to exchange with the people of Teh some of the flocks and herds, for beasts of burden and things needful; and it pleased the governor Teh; and he gave them of camels, an hundred and fifty score; and of asses, two hundred score; and of swine, not a few; and Algoonah gave him of the flocks and herds, even goats and sheep, and horses. And at the end of the year, the men of Kaiah went unto the great highway of the people of Katharia, that is by the great river of the east, and Teh went forth with them a days journey. And Teh blessed the people, and sorrowed by reason of their departure. So Teh turned him about and got him unto his own city; and the people journeyed by way of the great river on the king's highway; and the merchants and the people looked upon them in great astonishment, for they were curious and strange in their eyes. So the people came on for the space of six months, and they did encamp by the way every seventh day, and let the beasts and people rest; and at the end of the sixth month, they encamped by the great river and rested for the space of three months; and at the end of three months, their beasts were fat and well favored.

And Algoonah commanded that the people make ready for to journey on, and the people journeyed on for the space of eight months, and came into a goodly place. And Algoonah was minded to rest; but, the governor of that province was fierce and cruel in his disposition, and he sent men to fall on the people, for the fame of the people went before them. But when

the soldiers of the people came near, they saw the preparations for battle, and fear filled their minds, and they would not come near unto the strange people, and Jeshurim went forth for to speak with the general of the soldiers, and he bid the general come in and see the parchment of the great king.

And the general made Jeshurim swear that he should receive no hurt ; and Jeshurim swore unto him.

So the general came in ; and when he had read the letter he fell as one dead, for he thought he should certainly be slain of the great king ; and he entreated Jeshurim to turn away the anger of Algoonah the king from him.

And Algoonah sat in his tent ; and Jeshurim took the general thither ; and when he saw Algoonah, he fell to the earth and smote himself, and said, let me find grace in the sight of the king. And Algoonah took him up and set him on his feet, and said, Fear not, no harm shall befall thee ; and after he had spoken kindly to him, he suffered him to depart. And the general went in haste unto the governor, and told him of the letter of the great king.

And the governor was moved with fear, and sent a present of a blue robe of silk unto Algoonah ; and Algoonah sent unto him, saying, Peace unto my lord the governor, all we desire is a little rest in thy border ; then will we depart in peace. So the people remained there for the space of four months ; then they got them up and went on toward the great city of the king of Katharia ; and their journey was to eastward continually.

So the people rested on their journey from time to time, until they came into a province of the great city of Katharia.

Now the land was exceeding full of people, and their houses were as stones by the sea for number, and the people halted three days journey from the great city ; and it was told the great king, saying, The strange men of the west cometh near ; and the great king sent down an hundred and sixty score men, with chariots and horsemen, and demanded the king of the strange people to send messengers unto him.

And Algoonah sent Jeshurim and Jebal, and Strathmiah, the brother's son of Kaiah, unto the king ; and the messengers of Algoonah were comely young men and fair of countenance, and their hair was dressed, and they were clad in the blue vestments of the people of Kaiah ; and they had golden girdles about them, and they were armed with the cunning weapons of Kinar. And they were brought before the great king. And when they were come before the king they fell to the earth, as was the custom of the people of Katharia. And the king was so amazed at their beautiful appearance that he could not take his eyes from them. And he got him down from his throne, and lifted them up with his own hand, and bid them be of good courage. And he caused seats to be set beside his throne ; and he caused the young men to sit thereon. And he talked to them of their journey. He asked them to take meat with him ; and he entered his palace and set them beside him, and he gave them of the king's dish, and they did eat.

So the king sent the messengers with an escort of fifty armed men, and sent Algoonah presents of rich spices, and fine silk, and beautiful and rare birds, and a letter of peace ; and the king wrote unto Algoonah, saying :

The law of my palace is, that the king cannot leave the grounds thereof ; come, I pray thee, on such a day and visit with me.

And much more did the king write.

So Algoonah made ready on the day appointed by the great king, and went up to meet the mighty king of the land of Katharia. And when he drew near the city, the people all prostrated before him, for so the great king had commanded.

Now Algoonah rode upon a great black horse ; and a helmet of gold with peacock's feathers thereon was on his head ; and he carried a shield and sword of gold, and the vestment of his body was blue, and the bridle of his horse was gold ; and there rode with him Jeshurim, and the other messengers he had sent, besides the elders of the people, to the number of three score ; and the great king's soldiers rode before and behind ; and a herald went forth, saying :

Whoever boweth not down unto the strange king, this day will his head be taken off.

And they entered the great city of the land of Katharia.

Now the city was exceeding great, so that a horseman could not encompass the wall thereof in six days' riding. And the people of the city all fell down before Algoonah.

CHAPTER XII.

Now when Algoonah had come into the great city of Katharia, he was filled with amazement at the wonderful things he saw there. For the palace of the great king was of a beautiful construction, insomuch that it shone like fire in the sun. And there were soldiers standing round about the palace of the great king. And when Algoonah was come out unto the gate of the great palace, he was met by the chief lord chamberlain of the great king; and the lord chamberlain fell on his face, as did likewise all the people who were standing there. And Algoonah spake unto him in his own language, and bid him arise. And there was a mighty sound of trumpets and curious brazen instruments when Algoonah descended from his horse; and a fine cloth was laid for Algoonah to walk upon. And the lord chamberlain took him into an inner apartment of the palace. And Algoonah washed himself and rested from his journey. So a messenger came in unto Algoonah, and said:

My lord the king awaiteth the pleasure of the king of the shepherd people, and the great king desireth to see thee when thou art rested.

And the servants of Algoonah made him ready. And they put upon him the blue robe of Kaiah, and a girdle of gold about him; and a golden crown they set upon his head, and his hair was perfumed with the scent of precious gums; and he held the golden sword of Kaiah.

And it was told the great king, Lo, the king of the shepherd people awaiteth thee. So the lord chamberlains, even five-and-twenty, walked behind Algoonah, and the princes and nobles of the king's household walked beside him; and they came into the presence of the great king. And the great king descended from his throne and fell upon his face, and the lord chamberlains, and the princes and nobles of the king's household did likewise; nevertheless, Algoonah remained standing, for so the great king desired. And the great king had a throne, like unto one in which he sat himself, placed by his throne; and he sat Algoonah thereon. And the great king was of near the age of Algoonah, and he was of a mild disposition; albeit, he was at times churlish, and sudden in his disposition. And he spake unto Algoonah, saying, Since I was born have I been in this palace and grounds, and no farther. Thou art the first ruler I have ever seen. My manner of eating is after a fixed manner; also my lying down and rising up, and I durst not depart therefrom. Nevertheless, the lives of all my people are in my hands, and no one durst question my authority. Tell me, I pray thee, how thy people are governed.

So Algoonah spake unto him, for he knew the language of Katharia, and told him briefly of the manners of the people of Kaiah, and how the laws were in a book of parchment. And the curiosity of the great king was excited; and he desired that Algoonah cause the laws to be read unto him; and Algoonah promised. So they conversed long and pleasantly together until the time of dining; and before dining there was a liquor of dried herbs, spiced and well-flavored set before him; and a lord chamberlain entered and made obeisance;

and he took Algoonah into the bath of the king, and the slaves did strip the garments from Algoonah, and washed him, and anointed him, and painted his face; and arranged him in royal robes of the house of the great king; and they took him forth for to dine with the great king. And the place of dining was raised from the floor, as it were two cubits, and the top thereof was flat, and the provender sat thereon; and the persons who sat at meat sat also on the edge of the platform. And a servant first burned sweet spices and gums, and finely scented wood before the kings, so that the room was filled with the fragrance thereof; and another servant brought fine wine made from the leaves of trees and spices, and they did drink; and the meat was pheasants and birds of rare delicacy, and the flesh of swine, and fishes from the great sea. And after the meat, there was brought, upon salvers of gold, the finest fruits, and nuts and almonds, besides many curious things that the king of the men of Kaiah had never before seen. And at the close of the feast there was brought, hot, in silver dishes, the liquor of a fragrant herb. And Algoonah did eat and drink, and was satisfied. So the great king commanded his chamberlain of the inner court to take Algoonah unto his place; and it was done.

So the night came on, and Algoonah, being tired, was shown where he was appointed to sleep; and the curtains of the bed, and the sheets thereof, were of the finest silk, which he had never known until he came into the land of Katharia; and the musicians were to sing and play unto him in a further room until he should sleep; and it was the custom of the great king, that a soldier should stand by his bed, and one stood

also by Algoonah. So when the men of the great city of Katharia heard of Algoonah and his people, they were filled with curiosity, and the whole city was in an uproar; and when the morning was come and Algoonah had taken meat, the great king came into his presence. And Algoonah bowed himself unto the great king, and they sat and conversed pleasantly; and Algoonah said, Lo, my servant Biariah is the historian of my people, and he is with those who came up hither with me, and if it is the will of the great king, he shall relate in thy presence the history of my people. And the great king was much delighted; and bid Algoonah to fetch him hither without delay. And Algoonah wrote unto Jeshurim, saying, Send Biariah up hither immediately. And Biariah was fetched by a messenger of the great king's guard; and he fell before the king. Now Biariah was shrewd and much learned, and he spake the language of Katharia with great ease; and Algoonah spake unto him in the language of the people of Kaiah, and bid him be of good courage, and speak before the great king of the history of the men of Gehalehmot, even the men of Kaiah.

And Biariah spake before the great king, and his oratory was great; and he waxed warm as he spake of the wrongs of the people; and as Biariah spake before the great king, he was moved by the spirit of eloquence, and the great king was much moved, and wept before Algoonah; and when Biariah had ceased speaking, the great king commanded that his poets and his wise men should commit the history of the people who were shepherds, to writing, and place it in the king's library, beside the histories of the great kings of Katharia.

And it was done, and the great king called the noble prince of the land of Katharia, who was the uncle of the king, and he bid him make ready, and take Algoonah through the great city, and show it unto him. So the prince made ready, and took an hundred horsemen who were soldiers; and a chariot was made ready for Algoonah to ride in, and the prince rode beside him.

Now the prince was very old, and his hair was white like unto wool; but his strength was not abated, and he had been in many wars, with the black men of the south; and his disposition was fierce. Nevertheless, he loved Algoonah, by reason of the the noble bearing of his character, and he spake kindly unto Algoonah.

And the prince took Algoonah forth, and showed him the great city; and there was nothing that he did not show him; and Algoonah saw the artizans, and masons and smiths at work.

So they spent seven days viewing the city; and the prince had Algoonah unto his own house; and he prostrated himself and said:

Thy servant is not worthy that thou should'st enter his dwelling. Nevertheless, thou canst abide, and take a refreshment of meat and fine wine with me. So they entered; and the prince served Algoonah himself.

And the whole city was in a great commotion, by reason of the wonderful king of the west.

Now the men of Kaiah who came with Algoonah, rested in the palace of the lord chamberlain; and the king sent command that the lord chamberlains show the city unto them, and it was done.

And the great king had large islands over against the

land, in the great sea ; and the distance from the land was four score furlongs. And he had boats and ships without number ; and men who were cunning in the management of them. So when Algoonah came to take leave of the great king, the great king said :

I have islands four score furlongs from the land of Katharia, in the great sea ; lo, they are thine ; and I have boats and ships without number, and cunning men to work them, to take thy people and thy beasts thither ; and Algoonah said he would consider the matter.

Now the islands of the great king were not inhabited for the superstition of the people was against them, for they supposed that dragons and griffons did abide there. And Algoonah returned unto his own people, and Algoonah sent messengers for to spy out the islands ; he also sent unto the great king, and the great king sent men with ships to view the islands, and the men sent were Jeshurim and Biariah, with two score others ; and they came unto the islands, and Jeshurim, and those that were with him went forth, and viewed the largest of the islands ; and it was comely and fair and the trees bore all manner of fruits, and birds of curious plumage filled the trees, and the island was an hundred score furlongs in length, and half as wide, and Jeshurim was pleased ; and came back and reported to Algoonah ; and Algoonah was well pleased. And he sent unto the great king, and told him he would remove unto the islands ; and the king said it was his desire for them to remain longer.

Nevertheless, he ordered an hundred ships to go unto the place of the landing ; and Algoonah got him up with all the people and came unto the place of the land-

ing ; and at the end of the fifteenth year from the time the people left the land of Gehalehmot, they began to embark for the islands given them by the great king of Katharia.

And the people were two months in coming over with the flocks and herds, and all their merchandise. So they entered and possessed the larger of the islands on the borders of the land of Katharia. And the people were pleased with the land, and they made ready and cast seed into the earth, of the kind used by the people of Katharia.

Now the great king communed within himself, and said, These people came a great distance, and peradventure, they have no seed ; so he loaded ten ships and sent them unto Algoonah. And when the people had entered the island, it was fifteen years since the people were driven forth from the city of Laheiah ; and Kaiah had been dead for the space of three years, and the bones of Kaiah were taken into the island, and there were trees there ; and the people built them houses, and there was joy among the people. And Kinar, the cunning workman came unto the presence of Algoonah on a certain day, and bowed himself. And Algoonah bade him speak what was on his mind. And Kinar said, Let thy servant go unto the land of Katharia, and build ships after the manner of the workmen of Katharia. And Algoonah was pleased ; and he wrote unto the great king, saying, My servant Kinar beareth this letter, and he is a cunning workman, and he desireth to learn how the ships of the people of Katharia are builded. So Kinar went in a ship that traded with the men of Katharia, and he came unto the presence of the great king ; and the great king read the

letter of Algoonah, and he said, It is well ; go forth my son, and labor with my workmen. And Kinar went forth and wrought with the workmen for the space of a year. And he saw that the boats and ships made by the workmen of Katharia were unweildy. And he went into his own country, and made ready, and made ships and boats of a different fashion ; and his boats were swift and strong. And all the people prospered greatly ; and they went forth in their ships and explored the island to the northward, and they found that the islands to the far northward, were inhabited, and the men who inhabited the islands were warlike and fierce, and they were like unto the men of Katharia ; nevertheless, they were of a savage nature. And the men of Kaiah traded to the southward and to the northward, and the people increased in wealth, and were at peace with all nations.

Now the land of Katharia was an ancient land, and Algoonah read the histories of the land ; and there were the histories of seventy-seven great kings ; and there was a great king, who was the first, and his name was Phufhe, and he was of exceeding great stature, so that his bed was eighteen cubits in length ; and the sword of Phufhe was in the great castle over against the great city ; and no man durst touch the sword of Phufhe.

And the history related how that, before Phufhe, there was a great flood of water, which overspread all the land of Katharia, so that all the people, save Phufhe and his people, were destroyed ; and all the histories were destroyed ; and Phufhe durst not tell afterward of what had transpired before that. And Phufhe lived five hundred years, and he saw all the

land fill up with people again ; and there were many mighty men in those days.

So Algoonah read the histories of Katharia, and amused himself thereat. Nevertheless, he doubted the truth of the histories.

So Algoonah had lived on the island for the space of ten years.

CHAPTER XIII.

Now when the people had lived on the island given them by the great king of Katharia for the space of ten years, there was war in the land of Katharia; for the men of the south, who were islanders and robbers, came up and spoiled the ships of the great king.

The men of Kaiah had in all respects prospered. Their possessions were very great, and they became exceedingly cunning in the building and management of ships, so that at the fifth year of their sojourn on the island, had Algoonah sent three ships to the northward, for to explore and see what lieth beyond; for Algoonah had heard by tradition of the men of the islands to the north, that beyond the great seas was a land, fine and of a gentle climate.

So at the end of the fifth year, and of the twentieth since the people left the land of Gehalehmot, did Algoonah send Osurus, a valiant man, and one of good courage, with an hundred and fifty men and three ships, with provender and all things needful. And Osurus fell into a current of waters that carried him speedily away; and he sailed to the northward, and to the eastward, for the space of a year lacking two moons. And he frequently saw islands in the sea, but he made no delay, only such as was needful for to get him fresh water. And when the year came to a close, as on a certain day he sailed still to the north-

ward and to the eastward, he saw mountains in the distance like unto those on the borders of the land of Katharia. And he made speed, and came unto the land over against the mountains; and he saw where a river of fresh and pure water came down into the sea; so he lost no time in getting in thither with his three ships, and the men were joyful to come on the land. Nevertheless, the climate was exceeding cold, so that the men were fain to cast about them heavy coats of sheepskins, which Osurus had provided against such peradventure.

Now the land where they came ashore was covered with trees of strange appearance, so that the face of all the country was hid with the forest: and they found strange and curious animals therein, such as they had never seen or heard of before. And Osurus gave command that they should kill of the animals; and they found the flesh fat and well flavored. Moreover, the river abounded in fish, of excellent quality. And Osurus rested there for the space of six months, and did kill both of the beasts and fishes, and prepared the flesh thereof by drying in the smoke. Also there came vast numbers of curious birds, like unto the geese of the land of Katharia; and they were in swarms like unto the flies in the land of Assyria; and Osurus killed of the birds, and found their flesh good.

So Osurus commanded the men to repair the ships, and make ready for to journey on. And he builded a large mound by the river in that land, for to commemorate his stay there. And the mound is over against the sea; and in it he planted a stone with an inscription thereon; *and the mound standeth in his place unto this day.*

So Osurus made ready and came out unto the sea ; and he sailed southward for the space of six months, along the land, and he came to where the air was warm and balmy ; and he saw where there was a good landing, even a cove in the land where the ships might lay in safety ; and he came forth out of his ships and left them in the cove.

After he had cast anchor, and leaving a score of men with the ships, he went forth to view the land. And the land was a pleasant country, insomuch that Osurus was delighted thereat. And he went forth to view the land, and there was fruit of the rarest there, and plants of strange aspect ; and all was curious unto Osurus and those that were with him. And Osurus gave command unto those left to keep the ships before he went away, saying :

Go forth, and take of the fruits of the land, and of the vegetables thereof, such as are wholesome, and prepare an hundred and fifty lah's weight for our use.

So Osurus went forth with the residue of the men, with arms and all things needful ; and he journeyed into the land for the space of a year ; and many curious things did he see, and write down in a book. And when he had journeyed for the space of three months he came unto exceeding high mountains ; and when he came over the mountains the land was fine for a little season, but soon became dry and barren ; and he turned him unto the southward and came unto a great river. Now Osurus did continually build mounds until he came to the river, so that he might find his way back unto the place where the ships were. So he rested from time to time, and they did kill of the beasts and birds of the land. And he journeyed to the

southward for the space of two months; and he changed his course and came eastward; and the land was thin and barren; nevertheless, they made shift to subsist on the animals that came in their way; and at the end of a year he came unto an exceeding great river; and the land on either side for the distance of four hundred furlongs was exceeding fine and fair; and the men were spent by reason of the toilsome journey, and they complained of Osurus. So the men rested on the banks of the great river, and when the pleasant season of the year was at hand, Osurus got him up with the remainder of his men, for some had died, and he built a great mound by the great river, and placed therein stones inscribed with the history of his movements. And when he did this, after he had been gone from the ships a year and a-half, he got him down and journeyed back by way of the small mounds he had builded, and came unto the place where he had left his ships; and he came again. And all the men were filled with great joy; and all the time he was gone was three years; and he got of the plants and trees of the land, also of the skins of the beasts, to bring unto Algoonah the king, And he set his ships and came to the northward along the land, and encamped near by the place where he first encamped in the strange land; and he rested there a short season; and when he had rested and the wind was favorable, he set himself for to go unto the land of the men of Kaiah. So Osurus looked forth on the land, and behold it was fine and fair; and he called the land Mezzinaroth, which meaneth, in the speech of the men of Kaiah, a land where we rest.

So there was war in the land of Katharia, by

reason of the men of the south, who were islanders and robbers. And the great king sent forth his ships unto the south; and the islanders, in their boats, did put the men of Katharia to the sword, so that but few got back to tell the story; and the islanders prevailed and burned one of the cities of Katharia, and took the substance of the people of the town, who fled in dismay. So the great king sent unto Algoonah for to help him; And Algoonah reasoned with himself, saying: if these people are not punished, they will come up hither and spoil my land. So Algoonah made ready forty ships, and came into the sea of the south; and when the boats of the islanders came over against the men of Kaiah, Jeshurim threw balls of burning pitch into their boats, and the men of the south leaped forth into the sea, for they were filled with terror. And Jeshurim came unto their principal city, and he threw balls of burning pitch therein, with cunning machines that Kinar had made, until not a house was left standing. And the people besought Jeshurim to leave them. So Jeshurim made a treaty with the men, and took their king's son as a hostage, and then sailed unto his own land; and there was rejoicing in all the land of Katharia; so that the people gave thanks unto Algoonah for his services. So there was peace again in all the nations; and they sent caravans across the land of Katharia, unto the land of Arabia, for spices, and gold and ivory, and peacocks; and the riches of the men of Kaiah waxed great, and their numbers increased continually.

And when eleven years was past, lo, on a certain day were three strange ships seen over against the island, and when they drew near it was told Algoonah that Osurus and his men were at hand. So they came

apace unto the landing, and they did cast anchor and came ashore. And there was great rejoicing because of the safe return of so many ; albeit, there was much sorrow for those who were dead. And all the time that Osurus was gone was six years. And Osurus came in unto the palace of Algoonah, and bowed himself ; and then, at the command of Algoonah, he read of the history of his voyage ; and he brought the skins of the beasts, and the plants and stones of the strange land ; and he laid them before Algoonah.

So the mind of Algoonah was filled with astonishment, and he called certain of his wise men, and laid the matter before them ; and they all wondered at the marvelous story of Osurus. And Algoonah made ready fifty ships, staunch and well built, and gave Osurus charge to provide such things as were needful. And Algoonah put the whole matter into the hands of Osurus ; and he got him a thousand chosen men, and at the end of another year he went forth at the command of Algoonah to further explore the land of Mezzinaroth.

So Osurus went forth and came without accident unto the place of his first encampment ; and after resting he came to the southward for the space of six months, unto the place of the cove in the land where he left the ships before. Now Osurus brought beasts of burden, even two ship loads, for to bear him and his merchandise ; and he waited for the proper season, and came over against the mountains, after leaving an hundred men to keep the ships. So he came over the mountains unto the plain beyond ; and he made speed and came unto the great river of the land of Mezzinaroth, even to the place where he had builded the great

mound ; and the land was fair, and Osurus left four hundred men, and commanded them to cast seed in the earth ; and he journeyed down the great river for to explore it. So the men who were left cast seed of all kinds into the earth at the proper season. And Osurus went forth for to view the land, and after he had journeyed for certain days he came unto where the great river went into another still more great and mighty ; and after the two rivers come together, lo, they take a course unto the southward. And he journeyed down the river for the space of two months ; and the land was of a pleasant and delightful appearance ; and strange beasts were there, and the songs of strange birds filled the air. So at the end of the second month Osurus turned him about and came back, being satisfied that the land was a well-favored land, and also his mind was satisfied that there were no men abiding in that land. So he came unto the place where he had left the four hundred men, and the crops of corn and rye and millet, which they had planted, did exceeding well, so that they could not bring away one-tenth part ; so they abode there a year, and built them houses. And when Osurus came to leave, the four hundred men were minded to stay ; and they made Osurus sware that he would return in ten years. And he left them beasts, both male and female, and got him back unto the land of the men of Kaiah.

CHAPTER XIV.

Now at the end of the twentieth year of the sojourn of the people of Kaiah on the islands given them by the great king of Katharia, lo, did Osurus return unto the land ; and he had been gone the space of eight years. And he came in unto Algoonah and told him of what he had done, how that he had explored the valley of the great river, and had left four hundred men for to keep the land.

And Algoonah called the grand council of the people together, and laid the matter before them, which he had had in his mind for a long time ; and the matter was this : For these many years had Algoonah been dissatisfied with the position of the people ; for said he, Who knoweth when the great king of Katharia will require tribute of us for the islands whereon we reside ; let us go forth and seek new lands where we may abide in peace, while the earth remaineth. Lo, our servant Osurus, hath gone forth at my command, and hath found a pleasant land wherein no man abideth. Let us go thither with all our people, and abide there forever. And the grand council came together and heard the words of Algoonah the king, and they considered and said, What the king saith is good, and we have much gold and silver ; let us buy ships and useful animals, and corn, and wine, and go down thither ; and it was agreeable in the eyes of Algoonah what the grand council advised.

So Algoonah called on the people to gather together one half of all the gold and silver, for to prepare to remove unto the land of Mezzinaroth.

And the tax gatherers went abroad throughout the land, and they gathered of the gold and the silver an immense amount; and Algoonah sent unto all nations and kindreds and people, and did buy of them such things as would be of benefit, and use unto him and his people. And of the great king of Katharia did he buy an hundred and fifty ships; also, all manner of useful beasts and animals. So he made ready, and at the end of five years, he had equipped three hundred ships, and one hundred were filled with beasts and animals, and their provender, and the residue were filled with the people to the number of forty thousand, men, women and children.

And Algoonah spake unto Jeshurim, saying, take command of the people who go into the land of Mezzinaroth, and go down thither with them. So the ships departed by threes; as quickly as one departed so three more followed behind; the space of forty furlongs between threes; and so the people departed in families to the number of forty thousand, and they came without accident unto the place of the first land, even the place of the great mound, by the river of the north. And they made speed and came unto the place of the second landing; and the people came unto the cove and got them out of the ships, and stood on the land, and the time was in the spring time of the year.

And after the people had rested, and the animals were refreshed, Osurus went before the people, by the way of the mounds he had formerly builded, and came through the low place in the mountains, over in-

to the plain ; and the women and the children were set upon the beasts of burden ; and they came by way of the plain, and drew near unto the place where Osurus had left the four hundred, and the heart of Osurus was much cast down, for he spake, saying, Peradventure disease hath smitten the people, or there may be savage men therein, that I wot not of, and they have smote our brethern.

Now, there was with Osurus the wives and little ones of the four hundred, and they were filled with heaviness. And as one of the four hundred looked across the plain, as was their wont continually, he saw an innumerable company coming, and he called unto his fellows and told them of the matter, and they quickly made ready, and came forth with spears and helmets, thinking it must be a strange people ; and they came apace and saw Osurus, and the white beard of his face, and the men set up a great shout, and ran to meet the people with songs and shouts of thanksgiving ; and there was a great noise of shouting and weeping for the wives and children met the men as from death.

And the men had built houses and worked discreetly, and they had much provisions, even the dried flesh of beasts, and of birds and of fishes, as well as corn, and many kinds of wholesome plants ; and Jeshurim gave command, and they began at once, and laid the foundation of a great city. But Osurus turned him about and returned unto the place of the ships, for he had left men sufficient to manage the ships on their return.

So Osurus came again unto Algoonah, and told him how he had prospered, and also the four hundred men who he had left in the land of Mezzinaroth, and the four hundred had written unto Algoonah, and told him

of their love and regard for him ; and all the time that Osurus was gone was five years.

Now, about the end of the twentieth year of the sojourn of the people on the islands, there was born unto Algoonah, a son, and the child was comely and of good strength ; and Algoonah took him in his arms before the people, and the people rejoiced and said, Long live the young prince of the men of Kaiah, and his name was called Jeboran, which in the speech of Kaiah, meaneth of mighty strength. So the lad grew and prospered ; and there were men appointed to care for him, and preserve him from danger.

Now, when Servinus came out of the land of Mozman, he went unto Meshrodach, the governor of the land of Gehalehmot, and said :

The yellow men have fallen on the men of Gehalehmot, and lo, none remain save thy servant and these four hundred men, with their women and children. Let me, I pray thee, abide in a corner of this land.

And Meshrodach looked upon him, and said :

How camest thou to escape, seeing the yellow men fell upon thee and thy people ?

And Meshrodach looked hard upon him, and said :

Art thou not the one who kept the horses of my father, Merodach ? And art thou not he who came into this land after the return of my brother Shalmanezzer, with a plausible story in thy mouth ?

And all the cunning of Servinus could not keep him, and he trembled before the governor. And Meshrodach bid him begone with his people, and if he came thither again much evil would befall him.

So Servinus turned him about with his people and fled, and he durst not come through the land of Assyria,

so he departed another way, and came over against the great sea of the west and encamped there. And the land was fair to see, and the people who lived there were not a warlike people. And Servinus encamped before the city of Amascui, and laid siege thereto; and the people of Amascui made terms with him, and they fled over the borders of the land.

Now Servinus found that the city was not large, and there were not many people therein at the first, and he went not further, but abode in the city of Amascui. And he and his people went forth and tilled the land, and took of the fruits thereof, and entrenched the city and made it strong. And at the end of ten years, he went forth and crossed the river toward the great sea; and he fought the men of Jebal, and drave them before him and possessed their land; and he laid the foundation of the city of Salem, over against the river as thou goest down toward the great sea; and he dwelt therein; and he sent abroad, and made peace with the men of the land.

So Servinus prospered,

And Osurus came unto his own land, and Algoonah had made ready ships to the number of five hundred more, and all the people made ready; and they loaded four hundred ships with provender, even corn and things needful; and also of beasts not a few. And there departed another fifty thousand of the people in ships, in threes as they had done before. And Algoonah still remained on the islands, for, said he:

I will not leave until the last.

So the people departed continually from the islands for the space of six years; and they left not of the

stuff as much as a handful. And at the last Algoonah took his wife and his children, and entered into the ships with the last of his people.

And so at the end of the forty-fifth year from the time the people left the land of Gehalehmot, did Algoonah leave the islands for the land of Mezzinaroth; and they came apace unto the place where Osurus first landed; and further, unto the place of the second landing. And all the people remained at the place of the second landing until Algoonah should arrive; and they had broken the ships, such as were not needed, and built for themselves houses therewith; and there was much rejoicing when Algoonah came unto the landing.

Now the lad Jeboran was of the age of ten years, and his strength was as the strength of a full grown man, and no man could tempt him. And Algoonah set teachers over him, and he grew in strength and wisdom continually. And so all the people were in the land of Mezzinaroth; and Algoonah caused the people to build a city at the place of the landing; and the city was of a temporary character; and Algoonah said within himself: I will deal no more with the people of the earth; and he destroyed all the ships. And in this manner did the men of Kaiah disappear from the history of the world.

And the people that chose to remain at the place of the landing were an hundred and fifty thousand, and the number of all the people was seven hundred thousand, men, women and children.

So Algoonah left Osurus for governor, and all the people went over by way of the mountains, and came over unto the place of the residue of the people; and Jeshurim was governor there; and it was told him that

Algoonah cometh apace, and he ran forth and fell on his face. And Algoonah lifted him up and embraced him, and kissed him, and wept on his neck. And there was great prosperity in the land, for it was parcelled out among the people as each had need. And on a certain day Algoonah went forth and viewed all the land which the people had taken, and he felt pleased and well satisfied. And Algoonah sent Jeshurim down unto the place where the great river meets the one still greater, and told him to fix a place for the chief city. So Jeshurim went forth and came where the great rivers met, and he went a half day's journey down the greater river and found a goodly place among the hills; and he builded a mound there to mark it, and came again unto Algoonah.

So at the spring time of the next year, Algoonah sent many cunning workmen with Kinar to command them, for to build a chief city there. So there was much forest there, and the people laid stones, and hewed trees, and builded a house for Algoonah; and there was a mound builded there of great size, and in it was made a chamber; and they did lay therein the bones of king Kaiah, as he had commanded; and there was a house built, and in the next year did Algoonah come thither with fifty thousand of the people to see the place; and the land was good; and there came in all the next year five hundred thousand of the people; and they abode in all the valley of the land. And Algoonah set governors over the people.

And the land to the westward, even by the great sea, was called the land of Osurus. And the land by the great river, where the four hundred were, was under Bia-riah; and where the great city of Algoonah was builded

was called after the name of Jeshurim, for he was governor. And the people cast seed into the earth, and increased and multiplied; and twice a year did heralds go forth unto the land of Osurus.

Now the people brought out much stuff from the land of Katharia; and their wealth was great.

And the great king of Katharia sent unto Algoonah for to speak with him; and the messengers returned and said, Lo, the strange people are all gone, the houses are empty, and of merchandise there is not an handful left. And the great king was filled with sorrow and astonishment; and he sent his trusty prime minister and he went and found it as the messengers had said. And the great king caused it to be written in a book.

And so did the men of Kaiah disappear from the history of the world, even to this day.

CHAPTER XV.

So the people came in and occupied the land of Mezzinaroth. And Algoonah was sixty and seven years old; and all the people loved and respected him, so that there was never a king in all the land or among all the nations and kindreds of the earth, that was so beloved by his people as Algoonah. And he ruled with moderation and wisdom, and the people were prosperous and happy.

The lad Jeboran, when he was sixteen years old, went forth for to kill of the wild beasts of the land; and he was mighty in stature and strength, so that no two men of the strongest durst meet him. And as he journeyed forth in quest of the beasts of the forest, there came forth to meet him a large and savage beast; and the beast came raging upon Jeboran; and he cast at the beast an arrow like unto the staff of an herdsman; but the beast minded it not but sprang upon him; and Jeboran seized the beast by the skin of his back, and hurled him unto the earth, so vehemently that the life departed from him; and he took the skin from the beast, and brought it unto his mother Atomia. And he was at the time of the age of sixteen years.

And on a certain day Jeboran went forth to view the men at work in the field.

And there were certain men who knew of his strength, and they tempted him, and said, This boy thinketh to leave the presence of women and come with

the men ; and the spirit of Jeboran kindled within him, and he took up one of the largest of the men and cast him on the earth so that his legs were broken ; and when Jeboran saw that the man lay as one dead, he arose hastily and fled, thinking that he was slain ; and he fled unto the northward and departed from the place.

Now Algoonah had no sons save Jeboran : and the matter was told unto Algoonah, and he rent his clothes, and sent forth his trusty men, saying, Whoso bringeth the lad in safety, him will I make a prince, and a son of the house of Algoonah,

And he sent unto Biariah, if happily he might have gone up hither. But when the messenger came unto Biariah and he made diligent search, he rent his clothes and lamented for the lad. And Algoonah sat in sorrow and heaviness, and he sent forth to the westward, to the northward and to the southward ; and the men penetrated far into the wilderness ; and they came back and told Algoonah that the lad could not be found.

And Algoonah made lamentation, and said, How is the hope of my declining years baffled ; and the high things brought to naught. Lo, I builded in vain, for the pride and strength of my life is gone. The wild beasts of the forest shall mangle the fair limbs of my beloved offspring ; and despair and darkness follow me unto the end of time ; behold everything earthly cometh to naught, and there is no continuing of that which is lovely and good. I go down in sorrow and darkness, even as did Kaiah and Amarah.

So Algoonah wept a long time, and Atomia his wife, came in unto where Algoonah was, and comforted him.

So he caused three mounds to be builded, to commemorate Jeboran ; and he went forth after he had washed himself, and stood before the people and judged them as was his wont.

Now Atomia, the mother of Jeboran, believed not that harm would come unto him, for she knew his wisdom and his strength ; nevertheless, she sorrowed much by reason of his absence.

Now the land was divided among the people in parcels, and part of the people stayed by the great sea, even in the place of the second landing of Osurus, and Osurus was the governor ; and Osurus was a good man, who loved the people, and dealt justly ; and it was he who fled from the presence of Aristoblah, the young king of Mozman ; and he was also chief general of the hosts of Mozman ; and Kaiah changed his name unto Osurus.

Now Osurus was old and much stricken of years, and his strength departed from him ; and he sent unto Algoonah, and blessed him, and commanded his herald to go forth unto the great city of Algoonah ; and he wrote unto the king, saying, Behold, the days of thy servant are as smoke that ascendeth, and goeth forth to be gathered together no more ; send, I pray thee, and set a new governor over this people. And the messenger went in haste, and came in unto Algoonah. And Algoonah was filled with sorrow, by reason of the letter of Osurus ; and he sent and set Morah over the province of Osurus when he should die.

And Morah was of the household of Kaiah, even the son of Kaiah's brother, and he was of a valiant spirit, but hasty in his disposition. And when the messenger of Algoonah came, he held a parchment

sealed with the seal of Algoonah. And Osurus broke the seal, and read the letter of the king before the people; and the people were pleased, and carried Morah forth and set him in a high place; and Morah lifted up his voice and spake unto the people for the space of an hour; and when he was done, the people all set up a great shout, saying, Long live Morah, the son of the house of Kaiah.

And Osurus had parcelled out the land among the people, even so much as each man desired; and the people cast seed into the earth, and reaped in abundance; and Osurus turned forth of the beasts, and let them go whithersoever they listed; and the beasts multiplied greatly; and the people of the land of Osurus had fruits, such as the people on the other side over against the mountains knew not of; and they dried of the fruit, and they took thereof, and also of gold and silver and of precious stones, and made traffic with the men of the other side; and prosperity filled the land, and the people increased and multiplied greatly.

On a certain day, Algoonah called the heads of the people together, and convened them in grand council.

And Algoonah sat upon a throne made of gold and of silver from the land of Osurus, and sandal wood and satin wood from the land of Katharia; and upon his head was the golden crown of Kaiah; and his hair was like unto fine wool for whiteness.

And the great palace of Algoonah was six score cubits in compass; and the four sides thereof were four and twenty columns, like unto the trees of the forest; and the roof thereof rested upon the columns.

And there was an inner court, and on either hand

were doors ; and on the northward was the great audience chamber of the people ; and on the left was the room of Algoonah ; and round about the palace were there all manner of trees and fruits, and rare kinds grew in their season ; and there was builded there a great city, and the city was filled with the people. And Algoonah called the grand council to order, and caused the golden trumpet of the ancient princes of Gehalehmot to blow ; and there was silence, deep and long, among the people ; and Algoonah stood up and spake unto the people, saying :

Great and marvelous is the history of ye people of Kaiah ; many dangers and troubles have ye passed through ; yet, nevertheless, ye are come into a land, mighty by reason of its vast extent ; and also by reason of its fertility ye are come out here ; and have not the men of the world to face you. The land lieth before you in his richness, and ye have but to choose where ye may cast seed and the fatness of the land waiteth for ye to take thereof.

That ye may be strengthened in mind this day, I have commanded that Biariah read of the history of the ancient people of Gehalehmot. And Biariah stood up before the people, and read from parchments that he had prepared, for the ancient history was lost ; and he said :

Now it came to pass in the two hundred and fortieth age of the world, that there was a king did reign in the land of Phœnicia, and his name was Dorus ; and he was a mighty man of valor, and he was of exceeding great stature, and he was fierce and cruel ; and all the men of Phœnicia feared Dorus exceedingly, and they trembled and fled from his presence. And Dorus went

forth and smote the nations of the earth, so that they quaked in dread at his name ; and he laid tribute on the nations around, and they paid him gladly. And no man durst stand before him. And whoso displeased Dorus of his people, him did Dorus send for, and he giveth unto the offender an exceeding sharp sword ; and Dorus would compel him to cut himself withal until he died ; and if he refused, then would Dorus command his servants, first to take out the offender's eyes, then his tongue, then his thumbs and great toes, then his fingers and toes, then his arms and legs, and lastly his head.

So Dorus was a cruel and revengeful tyrant, and it so happened that there lived one Minas, a great and upright man, who did that which was right ; and Minas went and came, and feared not the great king Dorus ; and he was a worker in iron.

So it came to pass that Dorus heard that the king of Creta had a daughter that was fairer than the fairest in all the land ; and the heart of Dorus lusted after the daughter of the king of Creta ; and he sent down thither and asked the daughter of the king in marriage. And when the king of Creta had received the messenger of Dorus, and heard the demand of the king of Phœnicia, his anger kindled within him, and he said :

Nay, tell the king Dorus that the thing he asketh is not reasonable.

Now Dorus, besides being of such brutal disposition, was old, and of a hideous appearance ; for in battle had a spear put out one of his eyes, and his face was rough and forbidding. And so the king of Creta made ready

for battle ; for well he knew that Dorus would come apace and spoil his land.

Now Dorus, besides being very cruel, was also very cunning, and it pleased his mind to take the daughter of the king of Creta by craft rather than by battle ; For, said he within himself, The king of Creta will kill his daughter rather than she should marry me.

So Dorus had those about him who were as cruel and crafty as himself, and he sent them forth into the land of Creta, saying :

Take from the king of Creta the daughter of his that is a young and fair virgin. Lo, she goeth every morning unto the bath ; bring her up hither, and I will give thee so and so much gold.

So the men went down unto the land of Creta, and they fell in and wrought with a vine dresser, nigh unto the bath of the king's daughter.

And the king of Creta sent and had them arrested and brought into his presence ; and he demanded who they were, for he knew by the color of their faces that they were of the land of Phœnicia. And they told him that they fled from the vengeance of the king, Dorus of Phœnicia, for, saith the one who was speaker for the rest :

Thy servant was barber unto the king Dorus ; and on a certain day, as I was shaving the beard from his face, the skin of his face was cut, and he arose and sware that I should die with my brethren ; and we arose and came in haste by way of the plain and of the sea, and we desire thy protection.

And when the king had heard the story, he was minded to let them go. Nevertheless, he caused

them to be strictly watched ; and they went forth and wrought with the vine dresser.

So the spies remained quiet until the suspicions of the king had abated. And on a certain day, as the daughter of the king went into the bath, her servants lingered behind ; and the men of Dorus arose, and laid hands upon her, and tied a girdle about her face, and placed her in a sack, such as the dressers of the vine hath, and went forth in by-ways toward the place of the landing, toward the land of Phœnicia. And they got boats, and came forth toward the land of Dorus. And as they went, there were certain fishermen who saw them, and they moved warily ; and the fishermen fell on them, demanding where they went ; for the fishermen supposed they were stealing. And they took the sack, and lo, the king's daughter was therein. And they smote the men of Dorus lustily, so that one died, and the rest fled in dismay.

And the daughter of the king was nearly dead, by reason of fright ; and she lay as one dead. And the fishermen brought her unto their place, and the wives of the fishermen cured her.

And the fishermen were of the land of Ammon.

And the daughter of the king lay for a long time as one dead, and spake not, by reason of her fever.

CHAPTER XVI.

Now the servants of the king's daughter had returned, and found that the young maiden had gone; they made a great uproar, and did search the grounds and all the surrounding houses.

And it was told unto the king that his daughter was gone. And it was found also that the ill-favored men were gone; and the mind of the king of Creta was filled with sorrow and indignation, for he knew that she had been stolen by the emissaries of the king of Phœnicia. And he sent forth and made proclamation concerning the matter; and sent unto his friend Artaman, the king of Lystra, and made preparations to speedily go into battle with the king Dorus.

Nevertheless, the space of four months passed before they went into battle. And he marched forth speedily, and came over unto the sea, as thou goest unto the land of Phœnicia; and he camped there by the sea, and prepared to cross over in boats and ships, for to meet the king Dorus.

Now the messengers that Dorus had sent, came and told him what had occurred, and the king Dorus was filled with wrath at them, and he gave unto them sharp swords for to slay themselves withal, save one, who he reserved for to show him where the maiden was taken by the fishermen.

And Dorus sent forth an hundred chosen men for to get the maiden; and they went forth, and came unto the place of the fishermen.

Now the young maiden had not recovered from her distemper in which she had been thrown. Nevertheless, she had returned unto her reason, and told the fishermen what had occurred, and who she was ; and the fishermen marveled greatly.

So the men of Dorus came down and fell upon the fishermen, and drave them off, and took a daughter of one of the fishermen, instead of the young princess, for she was changed by reason of her sickness ; and they brought the fisherman's daughter unto the city of King Dorus. And she was also of a beautiful carriage, and very lovely to behold, but she was as a demoniac by reason of her being captured ; and she drave away those that were set over her. And Dorus called Minas the just man, who was also a worker in iron, for to make strong bars and fetters for the maiden. Now Minas was a youth who was of the household of Gehalehmot, and Gehalehmot was the aunt of the king Dorus and according to the laws of the land of Phœnicia, should have been ruler ; but Dorus had her put to death, and reigned in her stead ; and this was when Dorus was twenty years old ; and the son of Gehalehmot was hidden from the king, and he knew not Minas as the grandson of Gehalehmot. So Minas came unto the king, not knowing the cause for which he was sent, but he feared not Dorus ; and Dorus told him that his beloved daughter had become demoniac, and that evil spirits had taken possession of her, and that he desired to bind her with fetters and bars.

So Minas wrought in the king's chamber, and made fetters to hold the maiden ; but the maiden got opportunity and spake unto Minas in the speech of Phœnicia, and told him her story. And Minas was enamored

of the maiden, and told her that he would cause her rescue. Now Minas knew all the bolts and fastenings of the king's house ; and when the night was come, he came secretly, and unfastened the bolts, and came where the maiden was ; and she went with him, and he departed speedily on a camel, by way of the sea, unto where the fishermen were. And he rested not, but came and got to the land of the fishermen in three days' journey. And the father and mother of the maiden were overjoyed, and they embraced Minas. And Minas loved the maiden ; and her parents gave her to him, and they were betrothed immediately.

And the number of the fishermen was an hundred and fifty men, women and children. And Minas called them, and stood up and spake, saying, Well do I know the king Dorus ; and he will be upon us, and will make your habitations a dung-hill, and will put you and all of us unto the sword, and that very speedily. And while he yet spake, lo, an army was seen coming across the waters in haste ; and when they came nearer, the daughter of the king of Creta gave a joyful shout, and said, Behold, the ships and people of my father. And the king's boat came up, and the king was therein ; and the king was covered with mourning ; and he came forth on the land ; and when the king's daughter saw him, she ran joyfully to meet him, and embraced him and told him she had received no hurt. And the king was beside himself with joy, and he embraced and kissed his daughter ; and he gave command that she should be taken back into her own land.

And the king swore that he would overrun the land of Phœnicia. And he first made a treaty of friendship with the fishermen ; and they made ready to march

upon the land of Phœnicia, first sending his daughter back into her own land with a strong escort. And he moved with the army of Creta and that of Lystra, a day's journey toward Phœnicia; and there were thirty thousand men; and the ships were left at the place of the fishermen.

Now Dorus had made ready a chosen band of men, and came down, expecting the king of Creta would come forth to fight him; and the men of Phœnicia were splendid men and very courageous; and they met the men of Creta and of Lystra; and the men of Creta and Lystra could not stand before them.

Now Minas was in the army of Creta, and he came in haste unto the place of the fishermen, and bid them hasten unto the mountains and secrete themselves, for the king Dorus would surely destroy them. So they made haste unto a sure place. And the army of Creta and Lystra withstood the army of Phœnicia until night; then, as the army of Phœnicia rested, they came down unto their boats and went across the sea; for it was narrow, and only the space of ten furlongs, unto the land of Creta.

And when the morning was come, Dorus saw that the army of Creta had fled; and he was filled with wrath, and came down unto the sea; and he burned the houses of the fishermen with fire; and went into his own city for to prepare to war against the men of Creta.

Now the fishermen were of the land of Ammon; and they paid tribute unto Dorus, for the land of Ammon was not mighty; and the fishermen durst not return, but came into the hill country, and wrought with the shepherds over against the mountains for the space of

four years ; and at the end of that time the shepherds divided their flocks and herds with them, and bid them go out from among them ; for the pasturage did sometimes fail by reason of a lack of rain.

So the fishermen durst not return, for fear of Dorus, and they journeyed to the northward and to the westward, and came unto a new and strange land ; and they drave their flocks and herds before them, and lived in tents. And thus they did journey for the space of three years ; and they came unto the land of the hills over against the mountains, and they rested there. And no man abode there ; and the land belonged unto Hykos, king of Ægyptus ; and the people rested there. And Minas was governor of the people ; and he called the place the land of Gehalehmot. And the land was exceeding fair to see ; and all the plain below, unto the great seas, was the land of Ninus of Assyria.

So Dorus returned unto his own land, and made ready a great armament, and came by the way of the sea, and came forth unto the land of Creta ; and the kings of Creta and Lystra came forth to meet him. And there was a man of Creta of exceeding agility, and he slang stones an hundred cubits, and hit an hand's breadth ; and as the armies went to battle, he took a stone and when he saw Dorus, he slang a stone and smote Dorus, and Dorus fell down ; and his young men took him up and fled. And when the army of Dorus saw that he had fallen, they fled ; and the army of Creta and Lystra fell upon them, and smote them lustily ; and they came at nightfall unto the place of their ships, and they came away from the place in haste ; and Dorus did not die, but lay roaring ; and the prime minister of Dorus took a sword, and went in, and smote

off his head. And Eucalus did reign on the throne of Phœnicia in the room of Dorus, and the people had rest.

So when the king of Creta had driven off the men of Phœnicia, he sent unto the fishermen for to bring them unto his country, but they had fled, and thus did Biar-iah read unto the men of Kaiah until the the going down of the sun, and Algoonah bid him rest until another time.

Now it came to pass that Osurus died, and Morah was governor in the land of Osurus in his stead, even as Algoonah had appointed. And the people mourned for Osurus thirty days, and word was brought unto Algoonah, and he made proclamation that there should be mourning all over the land, and it was so, for the people loved Osurus, for it was he who first explored the land of Mezzinaroth.

And there was naught heard of the lad Jeboran, and his father mourned for him as one dead.

Now when Jeboran fled he came unto Erech, who was of his own age; and Erech was the friend of Jeboran, and Jeboran told Erech what he had done, and he must flee, for according unto the law made by the fathers in the land of Gehalehmot, he that sheddeth blood without cause shall surely die; and Erech said, Lo, I will go with thee.

And Erech hid Jeboran, and made ready and took arms and things needful, and came unto where Jeboran was, and they departed to the northward and to the eastward, and journeyed through the wilderness, and they came for the space of one moon and rested on the shore of a sea, and the waters thereof was wholesome,

and not like unto the waters of the great sea to the the westward.

And they rested there, and did eat of the fruit of the forest and of the flesh of beasts that they slew in the forest, and also of fish from the sea; and their arms were spent, and Jeboran made arrows of stone, and axes of stone, and such things as were needful; and they had builded a house over against the waters of the sea; and they made garments of the skins of the beasts which they had killed; and while they were in the forest on a certain day, lo, there came an immense beast, and the form thereof was terrible, and he had horns like unto the handles of a spear for length, and the horns came from his mouth, and his height was as it were ten cubits.

And Jeboran and Erech fled in dismay, and went into a high tree and climbed thereon; and the beast went into the water and drank, and went his way in peace; and the hearts of the lads were filled with terror, by reason of the appearance of the beast, and they came not down for the space of a whole day; and they came into their house and held consultation, and did agree to remove hence.

Nevertheless, they saw the beast no more, for he went unto the southward, and they still abode there until the falling of the leaves.

CHAPTER XVII.

The people were all gathered together within the great hall of the palace of Algoonah.

When the golden trumpet sounded there was silence and Biariah stood up and read unto the people, of the ancient history of the men of Gehalehmot.

Lo, Minas and his people were settled in the hill country, over against the mountains.

And Minas heard how that the land belonged unto the king of Aegyptus.

So Minas sent ten trusty men unto Hykos the king of Aegyptus, for to get the land from him.

Now the messengers took beasts and came by the way of the desert, even two moon's journey; and they drew nigh unto the land of Aegyptus, and they came over the river of Aegyptus and encamped thereon; and they came into the presence of Hykos the great king; and he spake kindly unto them.

But they wist not what he said, and neither did the king understand their speech, for they spake in the language of Phoenicia.

When Hykos perceived that they understood not, he called of his wise and learned men for to converse with them; and no man could understand them until there came a slave and bowed himself before the king, and said:

If it please the great king, thy servant comprehendeth their speech; for lo, they are of the land of Phoenicia.

And the king commanded that the slave be taken out and washed, and shaved, and a clean raiment put upon him, so that he might stand in the presence of the king; and he further commanded that there be a good place prepared for the men.

So when the morning was come, they were brought before the king, and the king commanded the slave who was called Phores, to speak unto the men to see what they desired.

Therefore, Phores spake unto them in the speech of Phoenicia; and the men spake again unto Phores, and told him whence they came, and how they had settled in the land over against the mountains, beyond the land of Ninus of Assyria; and they further besought the king to let them remain there.

When Phores had heard their message, he turned him unto the king and related what the men had said.

Now, therefore, when Hykos the king had heard the story he was much astonished, and turned him unto his scribe, and bid him engrave the history of the fishermen and of Minas on a pillar of stone, and he did so; *and the pillar of stone with the history thereon, remaineth in the land of Aegyptus, even until this day.*

When the king had heard the story, he gave command that there be written a parchment giving unto Minas and his seed forever, the land over against the mountains, from one border, even unto the other; and that the men thereof be protected through all coming time.

And Phores told unto the men what the king commanded, and they were filled with joy.

When the men were finished speaking unto the king, he commanded that Phores stand before him ; and the king spoke unto Phores, saying :

Thou art no more a slave, but free from this hour, by reason of thy shrewdness and wisdom, and no man durst any more lay tasks upon thee.

And Phores fell before the king, and gave thanks unto him ; and Phores besought the king for to go with the men, and the king commanded him to do as seemed best unto him.

So when the men went forth, Phores went also with them.

As the men with Phores prepared to go forth, the king sent and gave unto them twenty she camels, and twenty he camels, with an herd of sheep from the best from all the land of Aegyptus. And he laid on the camels loads of grain, and honey, and oil, besides changes of raiment ; and Hykos blessed them, and sent them forth ; and they came on, and in proper time came unto their own land. And Minas received them gladly, and he gave Phores welcome, and set him a place in the land.

So Phores took of the daughters of the people a wife, and became as one of the people, and he was then twenty-five years old.

Minas commanded the people for to sow, as every man had ability ; and at the time of harvest the land was filled with grain ; and he commanded that there be granaries made to hold it, and it was done.

Now there were a people living over against the great river of Assyria, and they were of the household

of Faimos, and their number was two hundred three score and fifty. They tilled the soil, and followed the traditions of Faimos, their ancestor; and they were white, and well favored. And their laad was desolated by reason of the locusts. And they sent unto Minas, and Minas received their emissary gladly, and bid them come up and abide with them. And they came up and pitched their tents with the men of Gehalehmot and abode with them. And Minas gave them grain, and bid them go forth and cast seed into the earth, and they did so. And at the return of harvest behold, the land was filled with grain; and no one knew where to contain it. Then did Minas cause other granaries to be made, so that the grain might be kept, and it was done.

So Minas commanded that all the people be as one, and to sow the ground of all kinds of grain, as every man had ability; even so was it done.

When the harvest time again drew near, lo, there was again more grain than before.

So, likewise, Minas commanded that there be built other granaries for to hold the grain, and it was done. And for the space of five years did the earth bring forth abundantly. And at the end of the sixth year, there came no rain in all the land, and there was a sore famine throughout all nations, and tongues, and people. And Minas brake of the granaries, and gave unto every man as his necessities demanded. And the men of Aegyptus came up into the land with gold and precious merchandise, for to buy grain, if haply they found any in all the land, for the famine was sore in all the land of Aegyptus.

As Minas heard of the suffering of the men of Aegyptus, his heart melted within him, so that he sent a great many lah's weight of corn unto the king of Aegyptus ; and sent him word to return for more. And the king Hykos, of Aegyptus sent down and got many more lah's weight of grain, even barley and corn, and lentils. And the king sent unto Minas ten camel-loads of gold, silver and precious things. And he sent unto Minas, and lifted himself up, and sware that he would be a friend unto the men of Gehalehmot, even down unto the latest generations.

After the space of three years did the famine abate in the land, and through all this time the earth neither brought forth grass or living thing, save in the mountains over against the land ; and all the flocks and herds were taken thither. And at the end of three years did the clouds return over the land, and the rain fell upon the earth, and the strength thereof returned ; and it brought forth grass and herbs, so that the face of the earth was again covered, and joy came again unto the sons of the earth. Then did Minas give command, that every one should cast seed into the earth, and it was done as he commanded.

So the great king sent his merchants, and they trafficked with the men of Gehalehmot, and they prospered exceedingly.

So Minas sent of the young men of the land, and they learned of all the wisdom of the Aegyptians. So that they understood the stars, as even did the Chaldeans ; and the poor and outcast of every land came unto Minas, and he gave them a portion of the land, and seed to cast into the earth ; or if they desired to be herdsmen, then gave he them flocks for to get the

increase thereof. So the prosperity of the people was very great.

When Biariah had read thus far, Algoonah commanded that he should stand aside until another day

CHAPTER XVIII.

The youths, Jeboran and Erech, builded a house near the shores of the sea; and Jeboran said unto Erech, Behold, the time of snow and and harsh weather cometh apace; let us prepare us for the winter.

And they did so, even by preparing the flesh of beasts, by drying, as they had seen their fathers do. They likewise prepared of the skins of beasts for clothing. And the winter came on, and they feared not, for they had a large amount of that which was necessary for their sustenance and comfort. And the snow fell, and covered the face of the earth.

About this time did Algoonah call the people together, and set governors over the people, for the better convenience of himself and the people, for so much judging the people wearied him; and there was an abundance of everything necessary in the land.

And Morah was governor over the people who were to the westward, over against the great sea; and there was no winter there.

And Morah commanded that there be ships builded, and it was done; and they builded ships, even three. And Morah sent five and eighty men under Albanas, saying: Go thee unto the southward, and bring me word what ye see; for Morah was of a venturesome and restless spirit. And he told not Algoonah thereof, but he sent his men, and they sailed to the southward for the space of two months; and they continually saw the land over

against them ; and they came to a pleasant land, and they made haste and came ashore, even in a place like unto the cove where the people abode. And the land was fair to see, after they had gone a day's journey therein ; and the trees bore strange and delightful fruits ; and birds of rare and brilliant plumage dwelt therein.

So Albanas took of the fruits and birds and brought them unto his brother Morah. And so they came as speedily as possible and came unto Morah.

When therefore, Morah had heard their strange story and seen the productions of the land, he could not rest by night by reason of thinking of that land ; and he called the heads of the people together, and said : Let us go down thither. But the heads of the people would not consent ; but Morah did not urge them ; so the matter rested.

As the spring time came the young men, Jeboran and Erech rejoiced ; and the frost went away from the sea and from the earth, and the birds returned and sang among the trees, and the leaves shot forth on the trees of the forest ; but with the return of pleasant weather did the beasts seem to depart from the land.

And it was about the time of casting seed into the earth. Then did Erech go forth to seek for the animals of the forest, and Jeboran abode in the house they had builded, alone. So Erech was gone for the space of two days, and at the evening of the second day he returned from his quest, and as he drew near he saw not Jeboran ; and when he came unto the house he saw marks of a mighty struggle, and the earth was torn in the manner of a plowshare tearing the face thereof ; and there were marks of men's feet, and they

were very great. And the mind of Erech was filled with horror, and he came into the house, and lo, nothing was harmed; and he fell upon his face, and the darkness of horror filled his mind. And it was on the going down of the sun, and Erech lay as one dead all through the night, and he spake not for groaning. And when the morning was come he made haste and sought the tracks of the men. And the tracks were a cubit in length save a hand's breadth, and they went into the water of the lake; and he went around by the shore of the lake, and he saw no more of them. And his heart sank within him.

So he returned unto his house and abode there alone and in great sorrow. And when his first grief was past he bethought him what he should do; and he looked and found he had much of meats and fruits dried, and he made a bundle thereof and set out for to go unto the great city of Algoonah.

And his strength was great and he was of good courage, and got him in haste; and so he went for the space of forty days, resting from time to time. And on a certain day, as some of the people were at work in the fields, lo, they saw one approach clad in the skins of beasts, and they were filled with astonishment; and they gathered around him; and he burst into tears, and all he spake was, Jeboran.

So they brought him in haste unto Algoonah; and when Algoonah saw him he fell as one dead, for he knew Erech. And they lifted up Algoonah, and cast water upon him, and he came unto his reason; and when he came unto himself he brake out in lamentations for Jeboran—and Erech brake out also.

Atomia, the wife of the king, came in and demanded

of Erech that he should speak ; and he lifted up his voice and wept a long while ; and after he had done so for a long space he opened his mouth and told of all that had happened unto himself and Jeboran.

And the strength of Algoonah came unto him, and he sent in haste for Jeshurim, and laid the matter before him. And Jeshurim went forth and called an hundred thousand men, and beasts of burden, and artizans, and workers in wood and iron ; and they laid provisions and provender on the beasts and went forth in haste unto the place of the encampment of Jeboran and Erech on the lake.

And they came in thirty days ; and they encamped there, and builded boats, and slew of the beasts of the forest, and dried the flesh thereof ; and they drew out of the fish, and did also with them as with the flesh of the beasts. And while they tarried Algoonah sent other beasts bearing corn and provender.

And after they had builded their boats they held consultation. And Jeshurim left all the men at the place of the encampment, save five thousand, and he went forth to explore the shores of the lake, if haply he might find where the lad Jeboran was. And he commanded all the men to return to their places save twenty score ; and they returned.

When Morah had builded other ships he commanded his brother Albanas to go forth unto his strange land of the south, and remain two years and cast seed into the earth, and see what manner of land it should be.

And Albanas took eighteen score men, and beasts, and seed, and all things needful ; and he came without harm unto the place of his former landing for he

knew the place, by reason of a high mound he had builded, on a hill over against the sea ; and he came in, and made his ships fast by sinking them in no great depth of water ; and he went twenty days journey in the land ; and it was a pleasant land, and the air was filled with the scent of spices, like unto Arabia. And he cast seed into the earth, and made ready, and builded houses. And the earth brought forth in great abundance, so that the men could not take care of all they had produced.

They also tested the fruits and productions, and found many that were rich and delicious.

In viewing the land, Albanas found bees like unto the bees of the land of Katharia, and they brought of the bees, and made them work in places suitable, even as the people of Katharia did ; and the honey was of good quality.

So Albanas stayed, and wrought in the land for the space of two years ; and at the end of two years he went forth, bearing of the fruits of the land, and a large quantity of honey ; and four score of the men desired to remain in the land.

And Albanas left them and went forth unto the place of the ships ; and he found his ships were as he left them ; and he raised them and loaded them, and came away unto the place where Morah was ; and when Albanas had told what he had found, lo, all the land was filled with excitement.

Nevertheless, there were those who were of the elder of the men ; who desired to remain in the land given them by Algoonah ; and many of the young men desired to go down there, for they had forgotten Algoonah.

And Morah sent unto Algoonah of all that Albanas had brought, of the fruits and birds, and also of the honey.

And when Algoonah had heard all the matter, his mind was troubled. Nevertheless, he sent unto Morah, saying, If the people desire to go down and possess the land, let them go ; but let sufficient remain to hold the land where thou art ; so the messenger of Algoonah returned unto Morah.

And Morah divided the people, and found that there were sixty and eight thousand who desired to go down unto the land of Albanas ; so Morah gave them permission to go ; and they had forty ships, and sixty and eight thousand made ready and departed unto the land of the south.

And Algoonah commanded that Albanas be governor of the people of the land of the south.

So they were for the space of eight months removing into the land with their substance.

CHAPTER XIX.

And Servinus builded the city of Salem; and the city was, as it were, a day's journey to the eastward from the great sea.

About this time was there a rebellion in the land of Aegyptus, for Marnoch lifted himself against Rameses the great king; and Rameses fell upon him with great slaughter; and Marnoch was driven forth with eight hundred of his followers.

So Marnoch went forth he knew not whither, and came over against the city of Salem.

And Servinus sent forth men, for to see what he sought. And Marnoch told him.

So Servinus set them a place in the land, but was distrustful of Marnoch; and he brought them in, and did cut off the thumbs from their right hands, so they might not war against him; and this he did unto Marnoch and seventy five of the chief men; for when their thumbs were cut off they could no more draw the bow; then did Marnoch and his men become as the men of Servinus.

But the eight hundred Aegyptians had no wives; and the heads of the men came in unto Servinus, for to speak with him of the matter.

And Servinus was very crafty, and he said, Lo, the sons of Jebus live across the plain, as thou goest down unto Arabia; go down thither and take of the daughters of Jebus for wives.

So they went down and asked of the men of Jebus for their daughters, for wives.

But the men of Jebus would not consent thereto, but drove them away. And they came again unto Servinus, and told him how the men of Jebus had treated them.

So Servinus said, Lo, the men of Jebus have much vineyards, and at their midwinter feasts do they become drunken with wine; both they and their wives, and daughters; go down then, and take away of the women, as each man desireth, and bring them unto your own place.

So when the midwinter feasts of the men of Jebus came to pass, did the young men of Marnoch go down, take of the fairest of the daughters of the men of Jebus and bring them up into their own place.

And when the king of Jebus was come to himself, he was very wroth, and got himself up with a large army, and came over to reclaim his people's daughters. When he had come near, Servinus went forth to meet him, and bowed himself unto the king, and besought him to shed no blood, but first to ascertain if the daughters of the men of Jebus were desirous of returning; and the king consented, and sent trusty men to talk with the women.

Now the men of Marnoch had done as they listed with the women, and they desired not to go back unto their own land through shame; also they were very kindly treated by the men.

So the king of Jebus made a treaty with Servinus, and turned him about and went into his own land.

Then as the people were in peace, did Servinus parcel out the land among them.

And the people increased greatly, for the land was a goodly land and fair; and there was no excuse for war in all the land, for the king of Jebus was friendly on account of the daughters of the people, who were in the land.

Further, did the young men of Jebus come down; and they liked the land and the government of Servinus; and they took parcels and became as the men of Servinus.

Servinus sent forth trusty men, and caused all the people to be numbered, and it was done; the number of the people was four thousand, and he had been in the city of Salem for fifteen years.

Now there came into the land, about this time, an Assyrian, who was an herdsman; and his flocks and herds were very great; and he had many servants and herdsmen; and his name was Ibram.

On a certain day, did the men of Jebus fall on a kinsman of Ibram, and took away his flocks and herds. And when Ibram heard thereof, he arose and took his servants and kinsmen, and smote the men of Jebus lustily, so that they restored unto Ibram the substance they had taken.

So Ibram abode in peace, and Servinus troubled him not. And he came into the valley over against the city of Salem, and encamped there. And Servinus went forth and talked with Ibram in the evening of the day.

Now Ibram was very old, and his hair was white like unto snow; and his stature was very great, and his countenance was calm and majestic; for Ibram did right, and no man was wronged by him. And as Ibram spake unto Servinus the spirit of futurity came

upon him ; and he took Servinus to the top of a high hill, and showed him the country from the foot of the mountains to the northward to the hill country of the south, and from the great sea unto the river to the eastward. And Ibram said, All this land shall my children possess, unto the latter days ; but thou art a traitor and a schemer, and all thy people are workers of iniquity ; and thy people shall be trodden under foot by my people, and cast out as dung. And there shall be no more place in all the land for the Jebusites or the Marnochites, or the Servinites. And my people shall be a great and mighty people, and shall be a wonder and astonishment among all nations and peoples and kindreds, until the earth shall be no more. And the people whom thou rebelled against, even the men of Algoonah, shall be a renowned people among all nations ; but thou shalt die as a fool dieth.

And when Ibram had ceased speaking, Servinus turned pale, and his heart sank within him by reason of the austere aspect of Ibram ; and his high thoughts of becoming the head of a mighty nation were overthrown by the words of Ibram.

And he turned him about and went unto his place in heaviness of spirit.

On a certain day did Marnoch call his people together, and stood up before them ; and he thrust forth his right hand, and spake unto the people, saying :

How hath this man mutilated us when we were defenceless strangers, and he in his walled city ! Lo, we are sufficiently strong to fall on him, and cast him out. And the men of Marnoch saw what he said was good ; and they said, Let us fall upon him.

So Marnoch made ready ; and he took four hundred

men; and they were armed with pruning-hooks and sickles, and spikes. And they came unto the house of Servinus by night; and they drew him out and slew him, and cast him upon a dung-hill, as Ibram had foretold.

And the men of Marnoch proclaimed him king; and he made proclamation unto those who were of Servinus, saying, Let us be one people, and be united; and all the people agreed thereto.

And they became as one people and lived in the land many years.

And the further history thereof, will it not yet be written in the Book of Jeboran.

So Servinus died; and all his days were an hundred and eight years.

Some of the young men of Servinus' household took the body from the dung-hill, and embalmed it, and lay it in a tomb over against the city of Salem. So the memory of Servinus perished from the earth until this book was written.

So Albanas went with sixty and eight thousand men unto the land of the south; and when his people had all gotten on the land, then did Albanas march forth a twenty days journey, and took the land, and possessed it. But his ships did he sink in the cove of the sea.

Now the land was a delightful land, such as had never been seen before. The trees thereof bore all manner of fruits, and the earth brought forth in abundance.

So Albanas was governor; and he took possession of the land, in the name of the king, even Algoonah. And Albanas set apart seven hundred men for to merchan-

dise with the men of the north, even the remainder of the men of Kaiah. And at the end of three years did he load twenty ships with the produce of the land ; and he sent forth the seven hundred men, with the twenty ship loads of the produce of the land, unto the place of Morah.

Now, while the people sojourned in the land of Morah, which is the province of Osurus, there was a young man of the people, who was enamored of the sister of Morah and of Albanas ; and they liked him not, but drave him forth, for he had no riches, and wrought not. But he was of a cunning and subtle disposition, and he fled unto the mountains, and abode there until the space of two years was past ; and his beard grew, and he was darkened in countenance, by reason of exposure to the sun and wind.

And at the end of two years, Galbronus, for that was his name, came down unto the province of Osurus. And no one wist who he was ; and many held him in fear for his strange and wild aspect. But he abode among the people, and he heard that Albanas, with many of the people, were gone to the southward ; and he also ascertained that the sister of Morah and Albanas had gone thither also ; and Galbronus wrought with the people, and was content.

Now, at the end of three years and a half, came the ships of Albanas ; and there came also the messenger of Albanas unto Algoonah, and he went forth unto the place of Algoonah. And the produce was taken from the ships ; and they were again loaded with implements of wood and iron, for the use of the people of Albanas. And the ships waited for the return of the messenger from Algoonah.

So while they waited, Galbronus went unto the leader of the men of the ships, and desired to go unto the place of Albanas. And the leader spake unto him, saying :

Why dost thou desire to go, my son, seeing there is a pleasant and comely land here? besides, thou canst not go without the consent of Morah, the governor.

And Galbronus went into the presence of the governor, Morah ; and Morah bid him go if he so desired.

So Galbronus went on the ships ; and the messenger of Algoonah returned, and they sailed southward unto the land of Albanas.

And Galbronus wrought with the men of the ship, and became very skilful in the management of the ship, so that there was no man so expert as Galbronus. But no one knew him, nor from whence he came.

So in due time they came unto the cove, and anchored the ships ; and they had been gone for the space of a year and a half ; and they took off the merchandise. And Albanas had ready at the cove, yet twenty other ship loads of stuff ; and he bid the leader of the ship take the produce, and go forth again.

And the leader was old, and desired to rest. And Albanas asked him who was suitable to take charge of the ship ; and the leader told him the most suitable man was Bromis, for so Galbronus was called.

And Albanas asked him :

Who art thou, and whence comest thou ?

And Galbronus told him not, but said he was under a vow.

So Albanas pressed him no further ; but his mind was perplexed, for he seemed to know the countenance of Galbronus ; and Albanas set him over the ships,

and he went forth with them, and he managed matters so cleverly, that they came in a month shorter time unto the place of Morah. And when Morah saw that his brother had set the strange man over the ships, he marvelled greatly ; and like his brother, he seemed to know the countenance of Galbronus. Nevertheless, he questioned him not, but brought him in unto his own house.

So when the ships were again ready to depart, Morah sent him forth in peace. But Morah was perplexed to know how the strange man came thither, and who he was, for he seemed to know him. So on their return journey, some of the men were evil-minded ; and they said among themselves, Let us cast this leader out, and take this ship, and go unto a pleasant part of the land and possess it.

And they attempted to cast Galbronus forth into the sea ; but he took a beam and smote the men lustily, and bound them, and cast them into the hold of the ship ; and came unto the place of Albanas.

And when Albanas heard what the men had done, he commanded that they should be brought forth ; and they were beaten before all the people, with rods. And Albanas spake kindly unto Galbronus, and brought him into his house ; and put a fine robe on Galbronus, and made him chief captain of all the ships of the people.

And while in the house of Albanas, Galbronus saw the sister of Morah and Albanas ; and her name was Meta ; and Meta never ceased to sorrow for Galbronus, for she loved him. And he saw her, and his heart kindled within him. And she went forth among the trees, to weep alone. And she had heard of the chief

captain of the ships, but she cared not for anything.

And Galbronus went forth unto the place of the trees, and came unto the place of the maiden ; and she looked upon him and knew him ; and she fell upon his neck and wept a long while. And Galbronus spake kindly unto her, and told her that her brothers, the two governors, knew him not, but trusted and confided in him ; and they were again betrothed.

So on a certain day, as Galbronus sat at meat with Albanas, Galbronus told him that he had seen Meta, the sister of the governor, and desired to be betrothed unto her, as he was enamored of the maiden ; and Albanas consented gladly, but told him he must also obtain the consent of Morah, her brother.

Now the ships were again ready to sail ; and Galbronus went forth ; and when he was come unto the land of Osurus he dressed himself in the robe given him by Albanas, even the blue vestment of the men of Kaiah. And he went out, and Morah took him into his own house.

And as they sat at meat, Morah, having read the letter of Albanus that he had appointed Bromis to be chief captain of all the ships of Albanas, complimented Galbronus thereon. And Galbronus told Morah that he was enamored of his sister Meta, and desired his consent to their betrothal.

So Morah gave him a parchment for to carry unto Albanas, with his consent thereon.

And at the proper time, Galbronus sailed forth, and came unto the land of Albanas ; and when he was come in, Albanas read the parchment from his brother Morah. And he called Meta, his sister, privately, and read her the letter of his brother ; and he asked her if

she was willing to be betrothed unto Bromis. And she answered, Yes, my lord the governor.

Albanas was pleased thereat, and made haste and made ready for their marriage. And he made great preparations; and they were betrothed after the manner of the people of Kaiah.

Now Galbronus went into his chamber, and shaved himself, and took off his beard, like unto when he first loved Meta, the sister of the governor; and when the young men went to fetch him unto the marriage, they knew him not, until he spake unto them. And when he was come into the place of marriage Albanas looked upon him and knew him; and his mind was so filled with astonishment, that his speech was departed from him. Nevertheless, he said not aught to interfere with the marriage. But when the feast after the marriage was over, Albanas went unto Galbronus, and embraced him, and forgave him the deception.

CHAPTER XX.

Jeshurim prepared boats in the lake, even four-and-twenty, and went forth to search for Jeboran ; and his manner of search was as follows :

By examining closely the bank of the land over the lake ; and if he saw aught that seemed as if any man had lately been there, then would he land his men, and go forth and search all that land. And thus he did for the space of two months ; and he saw not Jeboran or any man, or any sign thereof.

But on a certain morning, as they went forth as usual, they beheld a man of strange and wild aspect on the shore.

So Jeshurim made haste and came unto the land, and the strange man fled with great speed ; and the men pursued him with what haste they might. And he fled into a great cliff of rocks, and went into a cave therein. And immediately there came forth many, even two score, like unto him in appearance ; and their form was terrific, for they had hair on their bodies and faces like unto beasts. And furthermore, their roaring was terrible ; but they sought not to hurt the men of Jeshurim, but gazed on them in great wonder.

So Jeshurim made signs unto them, and they came forth and mingled with the men, and looked on them in great astonishment.

Now their height was a full cubit and a half above the tallest man in the army of Jeshurim ; and they wore

clothes made of the skins of beasts, and held spears and axes of stone.

Jeshurim desired not to fight with them ; so he gave one, who seemed to be a leader, a garment ; and he that received it cast it on his shoulders and set up a terrific shout ; and he then bowed unto Jeshurim and went in, and all his men with him.

And the leader presently returned, and made signs unto Jeshurim, and then took one of the young men and cast his arms about him, and then pointed to the southward, and spake in his own tongue vehemently ; and then made as if he would go to the southward.

So one who stood by said unto Jeshurim, This fellow desireth us to follow him.

So they followed him, and he went forth in haste ; and they followed him for the space of half a day ; and they came to a high cliff of rocks, with a cave therein ; and the wild man made signs for them to enter.

And Jeshurim, with ten others, went in, and they could not see clearly until their eyes became accustomed to the darkness. And when they looked, they saw a couch of moss and of skins of beasts, and lying thereon was Jeboran ; and he seemed as one dead.

So Jeshurim cast himself down and rent his hair, and bemoaned Jeboran. But he thought him to examine him ; and as he did so, he perceived that there was life yet remaining in him. And soon he moaned and opened his lips. And they went gladly and made a tent, and brought him therein. And Jeboran still lay as one dead.

Then did Jeshurim send and fetch wine that was at the place of the boats, and gave him thereof to drink, and pottage, made from the tender flesh of birds.

So that on a certain day did Jeboran open his eyes and look about him. And his reason returned. And he looked upon Jeshurim and knew him ; and he made as if he would speak, and could not.

So Jeshurim was much moved, and wept, and said, What desirest thou, my son? But he spake not.

So gradually did the strength of life return to Jeboran. And they made a bed and carried him unto the place of the boats. And Jeshurim sent forth trusty men to hasten unto the king Algoonah, and tell him of the safe rescue of Jeboran.

So Jeboran regained strength, so that he sat in bed, and viewed the land as they passed on. But he spake not ; and seemed to wish not for anything, save Jeshurim.

The wild men were not numerous ; but they had boats of very rude manufacture, of barks and branches of trees ; and they wore no raiment, save a few of skins of beasts ; and their meat was fishes and berries, and creeping things of the earth, also beasts of the forest. Their habitations were in the caves in the rocks ; and no women were seen among them ; neither had they fire, for when Jeshurim caused a fire to be builded, the wild men viewed it with great astonishment, and took it in their hands ; and when they were burned, ran howling to their dens.

Nevertheless, they seemed to desire to do the men of Jeshurim no hurt, for they lifted not up a weapon against them, but viewed them with great astonishment. Their faces were very loathsome to behold, for every one had his under lip cut off, and the bridge of his nose likewise.

And Jeshurim got of their stone spears and axes, and took away with him ; and he gave them presents, and went forth in peace.

Now therefore, Jeshurim hastened unto the place of the encampment of Erech and Jeboran ; and the wind was fair, and he made all speed, and came without accident unto the place ; and the men who had remained there, had builded houses there, and everything convenient ; and yet Jeboran seemed as one who had lost his mind, for he spake not, nor seemed to know ought that transpired, save in the presence of Jeshurim.

Now was Jeshurim minded to rest in the place where he was, until he got word from the king ; for the lad Jeboran was still unable to walk. And the messengers which Jeshurim sent, came apace, and drew into the presence of the king ; and one stood up, and said, Tidings ! my lord the king ; and the king commanded him to speak in haste.

So he said, The lad Jeboran is found.

And Algoonah said, Doth he yet live ? and the messenger said, Yea, my lord ; and Algoonah fell from his place as one dead ; and they who stood near cast wine upon him, so that he recovered.

And Algoonah went in and washed himself, and put a new garment upon him, and caused proclamation to be made, that all the people should rejoice, by reason of the finding of his son Jeboran.

And Atomia, the mother of Jeboran, called in the messenger that spoke, and questioned him closely of the condition of Jeboran ; and he was loath to tell. Nevertheless, she spoke so sharply unto him, that he kept naught back, but told her all that had transpired.

And the mother of Jeboran was much moved, and wept much ; and it was hid from Algoonah.

So Algoonah sent forth unto Jeshurim, with men who knew the way, for to take things necessary for the comfort of the lad. And the time of winter was on the land, so that Jeshurim feared to bring him forth ; and he abode there until such time as the weather should be propitious. The men who were there, went forth and viewed the land ; and it was pleasant to see, even in the winter ; and they builded houses ; and many of them intended to return as soon as they could, by the next year ; for the land was agreeable to abide in.

Now as the winter wore away apace, Jeshurim bestirred himself, and sent a letter unto the king, and told him of the condition of the lad, for his reason returned not unto him.

At the time of the mid-winter festival, did Algoonah command Biariah that he should read unto the people, of the ancient history of the men of Kaiah ; and Biariah stood forth and read unto the people.

Now Minas became old and much stricken in years, so that the strength of his manhood left him ; and he sent forth and called the families of the people, and stood up and beckoned unto them to draw near unto him. And they came near, and Minas sat him down and spake unto the people, saying :

Ye have been brought into this land in a strange and peculiar manner, and while the nations of the earth have been afflicted with sore famine, there has been plenty in all your borders, so that ye had to spare for those who had none. Behold, how ye have increased and multiplied, and your substance has become very

great, so that the merchants of all nations come thither to buy. Your flocks also cover the hills, and ye want for nothing. Would ye continue to be happy and prosperous? Then seek not to entangle yourselves with other men, either in war or peace; and let every man who cometh in hither be as a brother, and give him a place in the land. Then also seek not to have a king to rule over you in the manner of other nations; for if ye have a king, then will ye be his servants, and what assurance have ye he will not be as was Dorus, of Phœnicia, who killed his people without cause? Lo, I am old, and have seen all who came in here with me die; and I am the last of my race. Hear ye the words of Minas; live as ye have seen me live, and you will be noted among the people of the earth.

And Minas called unto the people, saying, Choose ye this day, whom ye will have to be governor after me.

And the people wept by reason of the words of Minas, and besought him to give them a governor, and they would be content.

So Minas called Crocton, a young man of promise and good mind, and set him over the people; and the people honored Crocton, and each went his way.

And the strength departed from Minas, and he gathered his feet into the bed and died. And all the years of Minas were two hundred and forty-eight.

And all the people mourned for Minas. And he was buried in the land as thou goest down unto the land of Assyria. And they set a monument of stone over him, inscribed after the manner of the people of Ægyptus; and the people of the land unto the latest generations read thereon of the deeds of Minas.

And Crocton reigned as governor over the people ; and there was prosperity in all the land ; and the oppressed and down-trodden from every land under the sun came unto them and found refuge.

Thus did Biariah read unto the people, until he tired, and Algoonah bid him rest.

Albanas was governor in the land of the south, even as Algoonah had appointed ; and every year did the proclamations of Algoonah come into the land.

And Albanas laid the foundations of a great city ; and there were cunning workmen in stone. And Albanas caused them to dress the stone. And he builded a palace, the like whereof hath not been seen. And those who delved in the earth brought refined gold and silver ; and the roof thereof was laid with silver, and it shone when the sun was thereon, like unto fire. And he builded a great temple, for the people to assemble therein ; and there was a great city builded there.

Now Galbronus was chief captain of the ships, and second to Albanas in the government of the people ; and four times a year did he make a voyage unto the land of Osurus, even unto the place where Morah was governor.

Now, on a certain time was Morah minded to go and see his brother Albanas, and the land he abode in, for his curiosity was great concerning it.

And he left the government of the people with one who was wise and discreet, and came down with Galbronus to view the land. And when he was come into the land, and saw the palace and temple of Albanas, his mind was filled with wonder and astonishment. So he was filled with discontent that he abode not there him-

self. Nevertheless, he was pleased to see the vineyards and groves of trees, and everything convenient that the people had.

And he took his leave, and went into his own land. And when he had returned and came there, he was displeased at the barrenness thereof; for it seemed to be barren, when compared with the land of Albanas.

Now, when the spring time of the year came on, Jeshurim made himself ready, and went down unto the great city of Algoonah; and the lad, Jeboran was of the age of eighteen years. And he was as one bereft of reason. And they came apace unto the city; and Algoonah saw them coming, and went forth for a furlong to meet them, in his chariot; and fell upon the neck of the lad and kissed him.

But Jeboran knew him not. And Algoonah took him, with much sorrow, and brought him into the city. And when the people saw him, they shouted long and loud, Long live the young prince Jeboran! But he wist not.

And Algoonah brought him into the presence of his mother, Atomia. And when he saw her, he fell upon her neck; and his reason returned, and he said, O, my mother! and wept upon her bosom.

And he spake unto his father, Algoonah, and knew him, and kissed him.

So his reason returned, and likewise his strength. And on a certain day, he told unto Algoonah of the wild men, and their manners and customs.

CHAPTER XXI.

The lad, Jeboran, grew in strength, until presently he was restored whole, as before. And on a certain day he spake unto his father and Biariah of the wild men of the lake, as follows :

All the time I was with the wild men, until rescued by Jeshurim, was five months, and the circumstances of my capture were in this wise.

On a certain day, as Erech went forth to seek the beasts of the forest, was I ill, and unable to go with him ; so he went forth alone. And on the morning after he had left, I sat in our house ; and as I sat, I heard a strange noise, and, as it were, the roaring of strange beasts. So I went forth, and lo, there were many uncouth men, who surrounded me, and made as if they would lay hands upon me, when the strength of my spirit arose within me, and I attempted to depart from them ; and they laid hands upon me, and I cast them to the earth, and they encompassed me with vigor, and overcame me, after a shrewd struggle.

Then they took me into their boats, and went forth in haste unto the place of the caves in the rocks.

Now, all this time they gave unto me no hurt, save such as was necessary to seize me. I was very loath to go with them, as they were very uncouth and repulsive in their appearance. Nevertheless, I must needs accompany them, as they were the stronger.

There were two score and eighteen men in the band, and they had left their country, which was to the northward ten days' journey, and came unto the place of the lake for to get fish and wild beasts and birds, such as dwelt around the borders thereof.

Their customs and habits, which I saw, were very beastly, for they cut off their under lips and the bridges of their noses. I learned not their speech to any extent, but saw and understood the signs they made, for they spake chiefly by signs; and I found they kept me, thinking I was one of the gods; and they did homage unto me when the moon shone.

So they never did me hurt, but ministered unto me.

I felt assured that my father, the king, would send men to find me, if Erech went down unto the land. So I was content to remain, as I was of the mind I could not return, having no means of killing beasts for food.

There was one with them who was leader of the band, and he drew figures in the sand, and made me to understand that he lived to the northward, and that his people were few; for it seemed they had been very numerous, but a dire pestilence, even the rising of much water, killed all the men, women and children, who were taken away by the waters, save four, who were carried away by an exceeding large bird, that lay them on the tops of high mountains; and from these four came all the present people.

And he made many things, even birds and beasts, that I comprehended not. And their manner of eating is very loathsome, for they delight to eat of flesh which hath decomposed by reason of lying in the sun; and I

would not eat thereof, but desired to eat of the raw flesh, which they permitted me to do.

And I attempted to show unto the leaders, of our history, but he comprehended but little thereof, for they have no reason like unto other men. They are also of great stature and of great strength, even as the strength of two horses. Nevertheless, they were not minded to do me any hurt.

When the moon first riseth in her fullness then they have a great feast, with dancing of a very rude character, and singing. As soon as the moon ariseth, they break the silence and commence, first the leader, then all do follow him, with great noises.

They are very expert in catching and trapping the fishes, as well as beasts and birds, and they dry the flesh thereof in the sun, for use in the winter time. The reason of my sickness was the use of raw flesh for food, without salt, and without preparing before the fire, as is the manner with our people; and I was sick for the space of a month by our reckoning, before Jeshurim caused my release.

So when Algoonah had heard the story of Jeboran, he was greatly astonished, and commanded Biariah that it be put in writing, and laid away among the histories of the people; and it was done. Also there was laid away with the history, the spears and axes of stone of the wild people. So Jeboran waxed strong, and increased in knowledge, for the man whom he had thought to have slain, was long ago recovered; and no one durst cross Jeboran's temper any more.

And Algoonah called all the heads of the people together, and the grand council of the people; and when there was a silence, Algoonah stood up before the peo-

ple, and when he stood up, there was great shouting as of mighty thunder, for the people loved Algoonah, and he was of a noble presence, his hair was white, and the strength of his manhood was not abated. Nevertheless, he was eighty and six years old; and he wore upon his head the golden crown of Kaiah; and upon him was the blue vestment of the people of Kaiah; and by his side stood Jeboran his son; and Jeboran was two hands breadth taller than Algoonah, and his presence was like unto the moon when she riseth in her splendor; and he had naught upon him save a tunic and a vestment reaching to his knees.

And Algoonah took the blue robe of Kaiah and cast it upon the shoulders of Jeboran, and took the crown of gold and set upon his head. And when he had done so, he lifted up his voice and bid the people behold him who should be king after him. And when Algoonah had so spoken there arose a shout as when the ocean is beaten by a mighty tempest; and all the people said, long live Jeboran and long live Algoonah.

So Jeboran was appointed to rule after his father, according to the law of the people made in the land of Gehalehmot.

And there were present there on that day emissaries from the land of Osurus, and from the land of Albanas.

And the messengers returned unto their own country; and all the people heard how that Algoonah had appointed his son Jeboran to be king after him.

And Morah, the governor of the land of Osurus, sent unto Algoonah, saying:

Come, I pray thee, and view our land; and bring the lad Jeboran, that we may behold him; for many

of our young men have never seen thee, and they greatly desire to see thy face, as well as the young man, even Jeboran.

And when Algoonah had considered the matter, he was minded to go down and view the land.

So there was an highway builded from the chief city of Osurus unto the chief city of the province of Biariah. And Algoonah went forth with Jeboran and Atomia, his mother, and journeyed down unto the land of Osurus.

Now the land was divided as follows :

First was the land of Osurus, being by the great sea, where Osurus first came to land ; and the number of the people thereof was an hundred and ten thousand.

Second was the land of Albanas, being the land to south, explored and peopled by Albanas ; and the number of the people thereof was seventy thousand. Third, the province of Biariah, being where Osurus first stopped on the great river ; and the number of the people thereof was four hundred thousand. Fourth, the province of Jeshurim, being where the great city of Algoonah was builded ; and the people thereof was five hundred thousand.

And all the people thereof had prospered greatly, and they were continually going further forth and taking the land.

So Algoonah sent unto Morah that when the days were pleasant in early summer, then would he go forth and view the province of Osurus.

So Algoonah called Jeshurim, and gave him authority to judge the people in his absence ; and he went down and came unto the land of Osurus.

So all the people went forth; some a day's journey, some two days' journey and some three days' journey, for to meet Algoonah. And Morah sent chariots unto the mountains for Algoonah to ride therein; and they were made solely for the purpose, and were very magnificent.

So Algoonah came apace and drew near; and as the people met him they made great rejoicing. And there were those of the older men who had known Algoonah; and when they saw him they wept exceedingly; and Algoonah also wept.

So did they journey unto the chief city of Osurus. And all the people from every part of the land left their labor and their merchandise, and came unto the chief city for to see Algoonah; and there was great rejoicing.

Nevertheless, all the people could not see him by reason of the multitude. So Morah sent forth proclamation that the king would talk to the people on the morrow in the plain over against the city.

And when Algoonah, with Jeboran and Atomia drew near unto the city of Osurus, Morah came forth to meet the king; and Morah got him down from his chariot and fell on his face; and all the people that were there did likewise.

So Algoonah bid Morah rise, and he arose. And Algoonah had him come in the king's chariot, and embraced him, and bid him ride therein unto the city.

Now, Morah was the son of Kaiah's brother, and Algoonah loved him for Kaiah's sake. So they went unto the governor's palace, and Algoonah rested therein from his journey. And when the morrow was come, all the people assembled on the plain by the city, and

at the third hour of the morning, Algoonah with Jeboran and Morah, went forth to speak unto the people. And there was a place made for Algoonah to stand therein; and Morah sent forth an herald, and he blew a trumpet, and there was silence. And Morah stood up and beckoned unto the people, and commanded them to hear; and he spake saying, This is a happy day for the men of Osurus, for is not our beloved father with us this day, and lo, he now speaketh unto the people; hear ye his words for they are full of wisdom.

So Algoonah stood up before the people, and he was clad in the blue robe of Kaiah, and the golden crown thereof was on his head. And when all the people saw Algoonah there arose a shout such as never was heard in all the land, for the people of Osurus loved Algoonah. And he was much moved, and wept, for he loved his people. And when there was silence he lifted up his voice, and said:

My people! Many days have I journeyed that I might once more look upon you and speak unto you. Ye all know how we came into this land and how we possessed it, and how we have prospered since we were here. I am rejoiced to stand face to face to-day, and hear from your own lips how ye have prospered since we came here.

I desire that all the people shall be as one people, and that ye may all become one great and mighty nation.

And long did Algoonah speak unto the people, and they heard him with gladness; and when he had ceased speaking, he took Jeboran and stood him before the

people, and told them that he had appointed him to be king after him.

And the people all answered with a loud shout, saying :

We will have no one save Jeboran for king after Algoonah.

So Algoonah went down and walked among the people for the space of a whole day ; and he talked with them, and spake kindly to all. And Jeboran went down also with his father ; and the people loved Jeboran also as they did his father. And when the day was spent, Algoonah went into the house of Morah, and rested himself for the space of twenty days, and then he went forth and viewed the land from one end even unto the other.

And on a certain day a messenger came unto Algoonah, saying :

If it is the pleasure of the king, Galbronus, the chief captain of the ships, desireth to speak unto the king.

And Algoonah bid him come in, and he came in. And he was a youth of good appearance, and he fell before the king.

And Algoonah liked his appearance, and bid him rise. And he arose and stood before the king, and the king said :

What desirest thou, my son ?

And Galbronus said :

I, thy servant, am of the land of Albanas, and our people are many of them of the younger of the people, and we have never seen thee, nor beheld thy face. Nevertheless, we have long heard of the goodness and wisdom of Algoonah ; and when we heard that thou hadst come into this land, our governor sent thy ser-

vant to ask thee to come down and view the land of Albanas.

So when Algoonah understood that the people desired him to come down into the land of Albanas, he communed with Atomia and Jeboran. And he consented to go down and see the people and land of Albanas.

And he remained in the land of Osurus for the space of six months. Then he took the ship prepared for him by Albanas, with Jeboran and his mother, and journeyed down unto the land of Albanas.

And a great multitude of the people waited at the landing for to greet the king when he should come to the land. And as the ship came near, the multitude rent the air with their shouting. And when the king, and his son and his wife, came to land, the people all bowed before the king. And there was made ready a fine house for him to rest in, and everything pleasant to the eye and to the mind to refresh him.

And when the morning was come, there was a fine chariot brought, wherein never any one sat ; and the king and his family rode therein. And as he passed in unto the chief city, the people cast fine cloths before him ; and many went before and behind to fetch him unto the chief city.

And where he should rest at night there was everything comfortable made ready, so that he might rest in comfort.

And they drew near unto the city, and Algoonah looked forth and saw the silver roof of the palace of Albanas, and of the temple of the people. And the sight thereof was as of the sun ; and the mind of Algoonah was filled with astonishment. And over the

gate of the city was there an arch of gold, and inscribed thereon was the name of Algoonah.

And Albanas came forth and bowed unto the king. And Algoonah embraced him, for he loved him for the sake of Kaiah. And Algoonah bid him come in and ride; but Albanas said, Nay, I will walk before the king unto the city, and unto the palace of the people.

And all that Algoonah saw filled him with astonishment.

And the great prosperity of the people was wonderful, for they had abode there but ten years. And all the people made obeisance unto the king; and he went in and rested himself in the palace. And all the people were gathered together. And on the morrow did Algoonah stand up before the people for to speak unto them.

And all the people were filled with joy and gladness, for the presence of Algoonah was like unto none they had ever seen. And he spake unto them, and said:

This day are mine eyes bewildered by the contemplation of this land, which ye have made like unto the delight of the earth for beauty and fatness; and the glory of your palace and temples is like unto the pride of the land of Katharia.

And he spake unto them of his desire that all the people should be as one people; and further did he speak. And when he had done he set before them Jeboran, and the people set up a great shout, saying, Long live the young king! and long live Algoonah, the pride and strength of all the people!

And Algoonah went forth and talked unto the people, and spake kindly unto them. And when he had rested, he went forth and viewed all the land; and his mind was filled with joy and peace to see the prosperity of the men of Albanas.

CHAPTER XXII.

So Algoonah was in the land of Albanas; and he judged the people for the space of forty days; and he gave the people instructions in the law; and set apart men for to expound the law as made by the fathers in the land of Gehalehmot.

And the time drew near for the king to depart unto his own place. And all the people gathered about him and wept very sore, for he told them that they should see him no more.

So Algoonah stood up before the people and spake unto them. And the spirit of futurity came upon him and he said:

Unto the people of Albanas is given the perpetuity of nations, and the sons of future ages shall see the work of your hands: for ye shall raise up temples and monuments like unto the people of Aegyptus, that shall stand unto the latest generations; and the sight thereof shall be an astonishment and a marvel of mystery until the times shall be fulfilled. And when the times are fulfilled shall the men of the world see the mystery of the men of Kaiah. Did not our father, the great and good Kaiah, tell us that ye should be a renowned nation among the latter days? Even so shall it be, and the wonder of Mezzinaroth shall be made plain. My people, I leave you. The voice of Algoonah shall no more sound in your ears, nor his presence be in your

midst. There is no strength in man, that continueth, save the strength of wisdom. Seek wisdom, and fail not. Deal justly with one another, and may peace follow you unto the latest generations.

So Algoonah made an end of speaking, and all the people wept much.

And Jeboran stood up and spake unto the people, and said, that if he should be king, then should he follow in the footsteps of the great and good Kaiah, and of Algoonah, his father.

And many of the people followed Algoonah unto the place of the landing; and they required that he should send Jeboran every year for to judge them.

Then did Algoonah make haste, and straightway came unto the land of Osurus.

And Galbronus went forth with the king; and they came up into the place of Morah. And Morah caused proclamation to be made, for the people to rejoice by reason of the safe return of the king.

Now Morah had builded a king's chamber, and placed therein a throne whereon the king might sit. And Algoonah sat thereon and judged the people of Osurus.

When, therefore, the time was at hand when the king should return unto his own land, Morah besought him for to let Jeboran remain in the land; and Algoonah consented thereto.

And the people mourned by reason of the departure of Algoonah. And he bid Jeboran to stay in the school of the wise men which was in the city of Osurus.

And Morah went with Algoonah unto the land of Jeshurim. And Galbronus was governor in his room.

And they came apace and drew near unto the city

of Biariah ; and a messenger went before, saying, Lo, the king cometh near.

And the people went forth to meet the king, casting garments and branches of trees in his way. And there was great rejoicing in all the province of Biariah on account of the return of the king.

So he rested himself, and went his way unto his own city, even unto the province of Jeshurim.

And there was a great day there when Algoonah came into the city, for did no man any labor, but each rested, and went forth and met the king in the highway, as thou goest down from the city of Biariah ; and there were eight score maidens with garlands and music, and they danced before the king, and entered the gates of the city before him.

So Algoonah entered his own house and rested from his journey ; and his mind was filled with peace, for his people were in great prosperity and peace.

Now, there were certain of those who were with Jeshurim when he went for to seek Jeboran, who admired the land of the lake ; and among them was Mestus, who was an officer of the host ; and when they had returned with Jeboran, Mestus went before Algoonah and did obeisance, and desired to go and settle in the land over against the lake ; and Algoonah said unto him, Is not this land sufficient for thee, my son, and is there not space for thee? Nevertheless, if thou desirest, go thou with thy brethren.

So Algoonah gave unto Mestus a writing of parchment, sealed with the king's seal, giving him authority to go and take possession of the land.

So Mestus went forth with nine hundred men for to see the land, and they went in the spring time of the

year, even when Algoonah went forth for to visit the land of Osurus ; and they came apace unto the encampment of Jeboran and Erech, and builded houses and cleared away the trees of the forest, and set things in order, and cast seed into the earth ; and the growth of the corn and grain was wonderful, so that the earth brought forth in great abundance, and the overplus was very much.

Now, the wives and little ones of the men were loath to go into that land for fear of the wild men, for they feared the sight of them. So the men were alone all the summer time ; and when the winter drew near they came unto the city of Algoonah for to take their wives and little ones unto the land, and they were loath to go. Nevertheless, they went and abode in the land. So Mestus took other men, so that his number was seven thousand men, women and children, and there were houses builded, and a city was built by the encampment of the lad Jeboran, and the new province prospered greatly ; and when Algoonah returned unto his own place he made Mestus governor over all that province ; and Mestus had men who were fishermen, and they fished in the lake, and dried the fish with salt, and trafficked in the land of Jeshurim and Biariah therewith ; and they continued to prosper greatly.

Now, the lad Erech, who was with Jeboran after he had returned unto his place, was set into the school of the wise men in the great city of Algoonah, by the king ; and the lad gained in wisdom and knowledge, for Algoonah loved him and made him to be as his son. And on a certain day, as Erech walked in the field to rest himself, there met him one who was a sorcerer, and the sorcerer cast his mantle on the ground and bid

Erech stand thereon, and Erech, through the spirit of curiosity, did as he desired, and immediately the sorcerer prophesied concerning him and said, Greater wilt thou be than thy master, and the grandeur of nations shall be in thy hands, and much glory shalt thou obtain. And when the sorcer had ceased speaking, Erech went away in astonishment.

Now sorcerers were few, and were of the ancient people of Aegyptus, and the people gave no heed unto their speech.

Now, Kinar, the cunning workman, was at the head of a school of workmen in the land of Jeshurim and in the city of Algoonah, and he instructed all the youth in the structure of building, and things needful. So Kinar was full of pains, by reason of much labor and exposure, and his strength departed from him, and he sent for Algoonah and told him his time was at hand; and Algoonah was exceeding sorrowful and heavy by reason thereof, and went in and talked with Kinar.

So Kinar told the king to set all his words in a book, that it might be before the eyes of the people throughout all coming generations. And it was done as Kinar desired.

And Kinar spake further, saying:

The men of the earth are as water which is cast upon the earth—vanishing away. Yea, he continueth not by reason of weakness, but the works of men's hands shall live and be viewed by the men of future time. So no man liveth without cause. It is meet that men should understand the mysteries of man, and of those who went before them. Behold, I perish from the earth, and my memory passeth away with me, but the works of my hands shall live after me.

Thus it is with my people ; they perish as the grass of the field ; nevertheless, they can live through all coming time if they build monuments in the land for the people of the earth to see ; and they must be so builded that men shall see the design thereof.

And Kinar spake further, and his words were sealed up and hidden away until such time as he desired should come to pass ; for he desired that the design of the Mound Builders should be a mystery until the times should be fulfilled.

And all things were done as Kinar desired ; and the mystery of the monuments hath been hidden until this day.

Now Kinar grew weaker apace, and the strength of speech left him, and he died. And all the life of Kinar was ninety years. And all the works that he did were very great, so that a book would scarcely hold them. And he did good in his generation, so that there was no man like unto him before or since.

And Algoonah mourned for Kinar, for he loved him. And he sent forth proclamation unto all the provinces, and all the people mourned for Kinar, as Algoonah commanded, for they loved him.

And the lad Jeboran grew in strength and wisdom from day to day, and went and came in the land of Osurus ; and he often sat on the throne made by Morah for Algoonah, and judged the people ; and all the people loved him.

And there was a maiden there, a sister of Morah and of Albanas, and of Meta, the wife of Galbronus ; and she was fairer than all the daughters of the land. And Jeboran became deeply enamored of the maiden, so that he could not rest day or night unless he was

with her ; and also sleep forsook him ; and he sent word unto Algoonah thereof, and the king was not displeased. Nevertheless, he told Jeboran that he must be betrothed in the city of the king.

And Galbronus saw that Jeboran must be betrothed unto the maiden ; so he sent her with Jeboran and an hundred choice men unto the city of Algoonah.

And they came unto the city, and were betrothed in the presence of the king and all the people, after the ancient manners of the men of Gehalehmot.

And Jeboran was twenty and four years old.

Now Algoonah saw all his people in prosperity around him, and nothing pressed upon his mind ; and he called a grand council of all the provinces and all the people, for to meet in the great city of Algoonah. And the time was set a year ahead ; and proclamations were sent unto the provinces of Albanas and Osurus, for to send wise and selected men unto the grand council, one man for each thousand men in the province.

And they came, as Algoonah desired, unto the city. And there were a thousand men, selected for wisdom and strength of disposition. And when the set time arrived they assembled in the great palace of the king, in the great city.

And Algoonah caused the laws to be read in the presence of the people ; and it was done. And after the reading of the laws, Algoonah stood up and spake unto the people ; and he told them that the laws and regulations were good, but it had become necessary, in consequence of the peculiar conditions of the people, to make other laws, touching the relations of the different provinces of the people, and in consequence of

many other things, which would appear unto the wisdom of the great council of the people.

And he further spake concerning the book of Kinar which was sealed up, and the substance thereof, which was hidden from the people. And he commanded that there should be certain of the people, even two from every province, who should take charge of the matter hidden away by Kinar, and should direct the people at the will of the king concerning the matter of the book of Kinar. And further, that the men so set apart should in no wise be permitted to reveal what was contained therein.

And the grand council sat for a long season, and made other laws, and did as the king desired in the matter of Kinar.

And the laws were all written, both the old and the new, and taken to every province; and there were those whose occupation was to expound and explain the laws unto the people.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Now, at the end of two years, did Morah, the governor of the land of Osurus, return unto his own province; and Jebgran, and the wife of Jeboran, returned with him.

Even did Morah take with him a copy of the laws made by the grand council; for the grand council had ceased from their labors, and had revised the ancient law of the land, and made it into a book, like unto the laws of the land of Aegyptus and of Assyria.

Jeboran, therefore, abode in the land of Osurus, and at the proper season he went forth with Galbronus, and journeyed into the land of Albanas. And Jeboran chose wise men and astute men, from the land of Osurus, and from the land of Albanas, for to take charge of the matter revealed by Kinar, the cunning workman, even two from every province; and those who were chosen had a temple builded in the land of Jeshurin, and in the city of Algoonah. And the book of Kinar was deposited therein; and no man durst look in the book until the times should be fulfilled in the latter days.

And the number of those who kept the book and the temple of Kinar, were ten, sound and chosen men, discreet of mind and cunning. And if there should be other provinces, then should there be other men chosen, even two.

So the temple thereof was builded, and the men chosen from among the people abode therein. And the book of Kinar was put in a stone box in the temple.

Now it was so ordered, that if any of the men who kept the temple and book should die, then should the governor of the province from which such man came, appoint other men to fill the place thereof.

Jeboran came into the land of Albanas and abode there, and Albanas builded him a palace and he abode therein; and Jeboran judged the people, and he was famed for his wisdom and for his great strength, for his strength was as that of ten men; and the people of the land of Albanas waxed greater than the people of any other province of the people, for they trafficked in silver and gold and precious stones, besides many other things. Nevertheless, did all the people prosper exceedingly.

The province of Mestus was by the great lake where Jeboran and Erech encamped, and the people of Mestus came by way of an highway unto the city of Algoonah and trafficked there, and they went forth and subdued the land, and made it prosper like unto a garden. But the wild men came no more into that part of the land, for they feared the men of Kaiah, but they remained in their own land. And on occasion, did Biahiah, the governor, read unto the people of the ancient history of the people; and it was after the following fashion:

Now, the man who was governor after the great Minas, died when he had ruled the people for the space of seven years. After Minas died there was a space of time wherein eight and forty governors reigned over

the land, and Gargon was governor after them. And all the people loved Gargon, for he was a good man, and very wise and of good disposition; and Gargon was fearful that he could not so govern the people. So he called the chief men together; and so arose the custom among the people of having gatherings of the people to determine matters of import; and they made a law that before the governor should die, a man should be chosen of the people to be governor after him, and so it was done. And on a certain year, as the wheat and grain was in the ear, lo, Gargon, the governor, dreamed in his bed at night, and his dream troubled him greatly; for he saw the grain of the land turn, as it were, into creeping things and fly away, and so he dreamed for three times; and morning came, and he awoke; and there was one who was an exceeding aged man, who was of the descendants of those who came from the land of Phœnicia with Minas; and the old man came in unto Gargon, and Gargon spake unto the old man, who was named Philetus, of the dreams he had; and after Philetus had heard the dreams of the governor, he spake, saying;

What the governor saw shall surely come to pass, for at the earing time of the grain shall it be destroyed. Nevertheless, the king hath ordained that the land of Aegyptus shall help the land of Gehalehmot in trouble, so let not the heart of the governor die within him. So Philetus ceased speaking, and went forth from the presence of Gargon.

And it came to pass, that as the grain swelled in the ear and the blade thereof grew white unto the harvest, that there came swarms of mice, and they fell upon the harvest, so that there was no grain harvested in

the land ; and the people were sore distressed and alarmed ; and the mice went forth, as it were, a cloud, and they entered the houses, and consumed the fruit of the land, so that there was no more anything left for the people to eat. Then came there after them falcons and kites ; and the falcons were like unto the dust of the earth for multitude, so that the air was darkened ; and they smote the mice so that they lay in in heaps all over the land, and the stench thereof was unendurable ; and there arose a dire pestilence by reason thereof, and a fifth of all the people died by reason of the pestilence ; and the people were appalled, and came in unto Gargon and besought him to do something to release them from the pestilence ; and Philetus came in unto the governor and bid him build fires all over the land. And the governor did as he commanded, and the smoke thereof drave off the pestilence ; and there was but little grain left in the land. And Gargon sent unto the land of Aegyptus five hundred camels, for food ; and the king of Aegyptus sent up grain, and sent also many other beasts of burden, so that the famine in the land was stayed. Nevertheless, there was great mourning, on account of the pestilence. And when the next year was come, the people went forth and cast seed into the earth, and there was great plenty at the time of harvest. When the harvest time was past there came into the land great myriads of flies, and they were like the clouds of heaven ; and the beasts fled before the flies into the mountains over against the land. So the people were in sore distress again ; and Philetus came forth and stood up before the people, and he commanded them to light fires again at night ; and they did so, and the

flies saw the fire and flew therein and were destroyed. Nevertheless, some escaped and dwelt by the great river.

Now the smell of the burning flies went over the land and created another pestilence, so that one-tenth part of the people that remained, died by reason thereof. And the cold season came on and the pestilence was abated, so that the people went forth and brought down their beasts, and came unto their own places.

And the people had rest from pestilence ; and there was plenty in the land during the time that Gargon reigned as governor.

And Philetus, the old patriarch, died, being three hundred years old.

And the governor after Gargon was named Philetus, in honor of the old man. So Philetus the younger was governor of the people of Gehalehmot ; and the fame of the land went forth among all nations ; nevertheless, the kings of the earth would not march near that land for fear of the noisome pestilences which were reported to fill the land.

So it was that in the first days the people had no wars.

Now Philetus, the governor, sent young men down into the land of Aegyptus, for to learn the wisdom of the men of Aegyptus. And the Aegyptians had a method of building monuments, and inscribing thereon. So the men of Gehalehmot learned it, and it was handed down unto the latest generations of the people.

And the king Hykos, of Aegyptus, died ; and there was great lamentation for him, for he was a good and

wise king. And his son Ragmaethon reigned in his stead.

And the young king was minded to build great monuments, such as should be a wonder and an astonishment throughout all coming time. And the monuments were three, and one was for the memory of his father, and the others were for the men of science to view the stars of heaven therefrom; *and the monuments which Ragmaethon builded stand in the land of Aegyptus until this day.* Nevertheless, he did not complete them, for they were three hundred years in building.

So the land of Gehalehmot had rest; and the people increased in substance and in numbers, so that there was no less men than before the two pestilences. Philetus also builded cities and set bounds to the land, so that there should be no contention among the people.

And at this time began the great king of Assyria to build the great city of Bablona; and the city sat in the great plain over against the great river which is in the land of Assyria.

Now Jeboran, after he had abode in the land of Albanas for a year, returned unto the land of Osurus, and, remaining there for a short season, returned unto his place, even unto the city of his father, even Algoonah. And Algoonah was rejoiced to see him and made a great feast in the palace; and the people were full of rejoicing.

And the men of the province of Mestus sent and brought Algoonah unto their land, and Jeboran went also; nevertheless, he desired not to go, by reason of all that he had suffered there. And the people of that

province were greatly rejoiced to see the king, and ceased from their labors, and came unto their chief city, and rejoiced to see the king and Jeboran.

And Algoonah spake unto the people, and commended them for their industry, and then went forth and viewed the land; and the people showed unto the king all that they had done, and he was greatly pleased thereat.

And when he returned unto his own place, they gave the king a robe made of fine skins of beasts, and he wore it before the people.

And Algoonah returned unto his own place; and he sent forth Rassolus for to explore the great river that was over against the great city.

And Rassolus was the son of Biariah, and was a youth of great mind. And he took boats and went down the great river for the space of two months, and he came into a strange land; and at the end of two months he came into the great sea; and the waters thereof were bitter, like unto the waters of the great sea that is westward of the land of Mezzinaroth. And the fruits and trees, and birds of that land were different from any that had before been seen.

So Rassolus returned unto Algoonah and told him of all that he had seen, and laid before him all the fruits of the land; and Algoonah considered within himself, and he was minded for to send forth Rassolus for to explore the land to a greater extent so he caused boats and small ships to be builded, and when the winter was past he sent Rassolus for to view the land and he took an hundred and fifty men, and when the winter was past he went for to view the land; and sailing to the southward, he came unto a large river,

which cometh from the eastward ; and Rassolus went up the great river for the space of a whole year ; and the land was a pleasant land, and very fine ; and he encamped there ; and the winter came on, and Rassolus and those who were with him builded houses, and went forth and slew of the beasts of the earth, and lived comfortably until the winter was past, and when the pleasant season come on he left five and twenty men with the boats, and went unto the eastward for to view the land, and he journeyed unto the eastward for the space of fifty days, and he came unto a great sea like that unto the westward.

And Rassolus builded a monument there, and turned him and came back unto the place where he left the five and twenty men ; and they were filled with joy to see the return of Rassolus ; so he made haste and turned him about, and came down until he came into the great river of the city of Algoonah, and he journeyed back and came into the presence of Algoonah, and told him of all that he had seen.

CHAPTER XXIV.

So Rassolus came into the city of Algoonah, and reported unto Algoonah all that he had seen, and all the discoveries that he had made; and when the spring time had come again, did Rassolus go forth with six score men, and he went down the great river unto the sea; and when he had arrived at the sea he went forth unto the eastward, and skirted along the coasts of the land; and so he did for the space of forty days; and he came unto a land very pleasant and fair, like unto the land of Arabia. The air was soft and gentle, and the fragrance of spices were on the winds, and the voices of birds ceased not day or night; and there was no cold in the air; and Rassolus called it the land of Morinah which in the speech of the people, is a land of delight.

Now did Rassolus abide there, and pitched his tents, and plucked of the fruits of the land and was satisfied. And Rassolus set men to work and builded a monument of stone, and inscribed thereon the names of the king and of all the governors of the land; and the inscription thereof was in the language of the men of Aegyptus.

And there was no need of casting seed in the ground for the earth brought forth of abundance; and they grew effeminate, and did no labor.

Now when the temple of Kinar was builded there came in one who was the patriarch of the people, and

he it was whom Kinar told the things that must come to pass hereafter.

And the ten men who were set apart for the guarding of the temple and the book, were taken in ; and the patriarch of the people that day consecrated them unto the work of the book of Kinar ; and they took the temple and the book ; but they wist not what was contained therein, save such as was necessary to their duty in taking the care thereof.

And there were cunning workmen in the land ; but, never such an one as Kinar, and there never will be again ; and the men who took care of the temple, were such as never took wife, for they must needs live without the society of women.

And when the temple was builded, the people all sent their gifts thereto.

And the men of Albanas sent gold and precious stones ; and the men of Osurus sent fine wood, and the temple was completed ; and no man durst enter therein, save those who were set apart for that purpose, for no man should know of the matter until it be revealed in the latter days.

Now there was one, Icarus, who was of a curious disposition, and he was minded to enter therein ; and when he essayed so to do, lo, he became as a demoniac, and his reason left him ; and he never again was of a sound mind.

Now there was one who was of the lineage of the people of Mozman, whose name was Ballophron, and Ballophron lived in the land of Osurus, over the river that runneth through the land. And Ballophron was of an ambitious mind, and he essayed to go to the

northward for to set up a province in which he should be the governor, and finally the king.

But Morah forbid him, for the cause that it was not necessary; for the king, Algoonah, had commanded that every man should have what land he should be able to make fruitful.

And Ballophron was very wroth, and got him into the fastnesses of the mountains with three hundred men, who followed him. And Ballophron went forth and levied tribute on the people, and committed robbery. And when the men who were with him saw this they left him, save two score, and returned unto the land of Osurus.

But Ballophron staid in the mountains, and went forth and harrassed the people as they came up from the land of Biariah. And Morah sent unto Algoonah, and told him of the action of Ballophron; and Algoonah sent and commanded Morah to send men against him; and Morah did so.

But Morah desired not to shed the blood of Ballophron, but sent him word to come down into the land, and restore what had been taken, and be as he was before. But Ballophron derided the message of Morah, and entrenched himself in the mountains, and cast great stones down on the men who Morah had sent against him; so that they were fain to retire from the presence of Ballophron.

And he went forth and fell upon the people as they crossed from the land of Biariah, and slew some, and took their merchandise, and retreated unto his place.

Then did the spirit of Algoonah burn within him, and he sent Jeshurim with five hundred men for to drive Ballophron and his men from the land

Now Ballophron was crafty, and found a large cave in the rocks, and he disguised the mouth thereof, so that a man could not discern it. And Jeshurim was a man of valor, and his strength was not abated; and he set watchers on the tops of the mountains, and he found the cave of Ballophron, and he encompassed it about, and brake down the wall thereof, and summoned Ballophron to submit to the king and give himself up; but he answered deridingly, and cast spears and javelins at Jeshurim.

Then was the anger of Jeshurim enkindled, and he cast in balls of burning pitch, so that the men therein were choked by reason thereof, and they came forth, and fell into the hands of Jeshurim.

So Jeshurim took the men and brought them unto the city of Osurus. And they were examined by Jeboran, the king's son, for it was not expedient for the king to be there.

And Jeboran heard the matter, and judged that Ballophron and those who were with him should surely die, according to the laws of the people, made in the city of Laheiah and in the land of Gehalehmot.

And on a certain day were they led forth, and they had iron spikes drave into the heads of men, so that they died before the people. And the head of Ballophron was put on a monument in the pass of the mountain; and the people looked thereon until the third generation.

Then was there peace and quietude all over the land. And at this time did Algoonah send forth proclamation that there should be a grand council of the people every three years, for to regulate such matters as should be

necessary, as the people became more numerous ; and it was done as the king commanded.

Now, Rassolus went forth from his place and journeyed to the eastward and to the southward, and explored the land ; and so he did for the space of three years ; and he returned unto his place in the land of Morinah and abode there ; and as he and the men who were with him abode there, a dire pestilence brake out among them, so that Rassolus died and all who were with him, save eight and a score, and the residue of the men got up in haste and came unto the entrance of the great river, and farther, made speed and came unto the city of Algoonah, after they had been gone for the space of three years and a half ; and all the people mourned for those who were dead, and the men buried Rassolus and his men and builded a great monument over them ; and Algoonah sent other men by way of the river to the northward, of which we shall hear hereafter.

And the men of Mestus liked not their province by reason of the cold of the winter, and they went to the southward, even unto the great river that goeth into the great river of Algoonah, and abode in that land, and they were to the eastward over against the great city of Algoonah.

And on occasion did Biariah read unto the people, of the ancient land of Gehalehmot and of the people therein. Philetus was governor in the six hundred and tenth age of the world ; and he was wise and did that which was right and proper ; and his young men were learned in all the science of Aegyptus, and they trafficked with the land of Aegyptus, and brought the fruit of the land therein.

Now, there lived in the land of Gehalehmot a renowned man, and he was of the land of Sinar, and he came unto the land. His name was Aoba, and he was very rich and very renowned. And Aoba was a just man and good; and on a certain day, as Aoba sat in his house, dire disasters befell him. First, his flocks and herds died, then his children and their little ones, and then his grain was destroyed by fire, then a dire pestilence brake out on his body. Nevertheless, Aoba recovered therefrom, and became again a rich man. Aoba was of the land of Sinar; nevertheless he abode in the land, and Philetus loved Aoba, and made him a great man in the land, so that he was next to the governor in authority. And the people were a simple and child-like people; and no king of the earth turned in hither for to take the land; and Aoba taught unto the people the art of pottery, for he wrought thereat himself; and the people first made vessels of clay at this time, and they taught the art unto the people of Aegyptus; and the men of Aegyptus became very skilful thereat. And many more like things did Aoba teach unto the people, for he was a wise and cunning man. And thus did Biariah read unto the people.

Now, Algoonah sent forth proclamation that all the people should be numbered, and it was done, and the people had increased mightily and multiplied exceedingly, and the land had rest and peace.

CHAPTER XXV.

Now, all the years that the people were in the land of Mezzinaroth were thirty and four years, and the people had increased and multiplied greatly, so that Algoonah sent men for to explore the land for to find suitable places for suitable provinces; and he sent Gonath, the brother of Rassolus; and Gonath went down the great river for the space of forty days, and came unto a goodly land on the hither side of the great river; and the land was fine and pleasant; and he cast seed into the earth and builded houses, and remained there until the year was past. And Gonath returned unto the king and told him of the land; and Algoonah sent Jeshurim with one hundred thousand men, and they wrought that year and dug trenches and builded a city, and made a province ready to be inhabited. And the men came and brought their wives and little ones and dwelt in the land, and it was a fair and pleasant land.

So on a certain time Algoonah was minded to go down and view the land; and he was nigh an hundred years old, yet was not his natural strength abated, neither did his head bow by reason of the years thereon. And the land was a fertile land and prospered greatly, so that when Algoonah returned he sent another hundred thousand men from the province of Biariah for to fill the land. And he set Gonath over the province for Governor.

And Gonath sent two wise and discreet youths to be of those who kept the temple of Kinar and the books thereof.

And on a certain time there came forth from the temple of Kinar one of those who kept it; and he went forth to instruct the people in the art of measuring; for these men were all the time learning of what would be valuable unto the people; and they set bounds unto the land. After this was builded walls great and long; and the men viewed the stars of heaven and gave names thereto, and foretold that which should come to pass if the sun or moon be darkened. And the wise men of the temple of Kinār explained these things unto the people, so that they feared no more when it should happen.

And the city of Algoonah was famous for the vessels of clay which were made therein; for the workmen were very skillful, and the people followed the arts of Aegyptus and Katharia in all things save one.

Now there were six provinces in the land. First, was the province of Jeshurim, where the king lived; then the province of Biariah; then the province of Mestus; then the province of Gonath; then the province of Osurus; then the province of Albanas. And the people waxed great in the land of Mezzinaroth, and the land looked like the land of Katharia or of Assyria, for the people builded highways, and set ditches, and mounds in the land.

At this time did Albanas send forth certain men unto the southward for to view the land. And there were four and twenty men in the ship, and they went forth to the southward; and Albanas nor the people of the land never heard of them more; for a storm

drave away unto an island, and they must needs abide thereon, for they knew not to return ; and their ship was broken on the shore of the island ; *and the history thereof will one day be written.*

Now Biariah had a son named Jaban, who was of the wisest of the men of the land ; and Biariah had instructed Jaban in the secret matters of the history of the people.

And Biariah was old and much stricken of years. And his strength forsook him and he lay him down in his bed, and his end drew near.

So he sent for Algoonah, who came in haste and viewed Biariah as he lay in his bed. And Biariah spake kindly unto Algoonah and comforted him ; for he wept and was heavy of heart. So Biariah said, Lo, I am as a sheaf of corn fully ripe ; my body is dead, and the time for me to be gathered in has come. I trust all the matters of the history of the people unto Jaban, my son.

So Biariah died, and Algoonah sent forth unto the uttermost parts of the land that the people should mourn for Biariah ; and it was done.

And they buried Biariah over against the great river, and inscribed his name on a monument, and set it up there. And the province was called the province of Biariah ; for he was a good and an upright man, and always did that which was right.

And Biariah was born in the land of Gehalehmot and in the city of Laheiah ; and his father was the ruler of the city of Laheiah ; and all the years of Biariah were an hundred and eighteen.

So the people all mourned for Biariah, and Jaban

was the governor in his stead ; and he was a just man, and good, and loved the people.

Now Jaban liked not the land of Biariah, by reason of there being often a lack of rain therein, in the time of the earing of the corn ; and he devised means of bringing water from the great river, onto the land, after the manner of the men of Aegyptus, and it was well ; and the people overcame the drought of the land.

Now the province of Osurus was a fruitful land, and the people did much traffic with the men of the other parts of the land ; for they made salt and sent it unto the other parts of the land ; and there was gold and silver and precious stones there ; and they brought the gold and silver and brass into the great city of Algoonah ; and he commanded that the cunning workmen make money thereof. And it was done, and it was sent into all parts of the land ; so the people trafficked therewith.

And the land of Albanas increased and multiplied greatly ; for there came of the people from all parts of the land. And Galbronus went with the ships, and went and came three times in each year ; and the king's son Jeboran, abode in the land of Albanas, for he was pleased with that land.

Nevertheless, every second year he went unto the city of Algoonah, for to see his father, and to see the people of the land ; and Jeboran went into the land of Gonath and viewed it, and was pleased thereat ; for the province was in appearance like unto the garden of the king of Katharia ; and while Jeboran was in the city of Algoonah, the grand council of the people were gathered together in the temple of the people.

And Algoonah sat upon a throne in the hither end of the temple, and did as was his wont.

So he stood up and caused the trumpet to blow, and there was silence ; and the king spake unto the people, and told them of the prosperity of all the land, and that it would be so even unto the latest generations if there was peace between all the men of the land.

And he persuaded the grand council for to be very wise and discreet in their laws and regulations ; and the people of the council heard Algoonah with great attention, for they loved him. And the grand council sat for the space of two months ; then each man returned unto his place.

Now Albanas had waited two years and over, and all the men whom he had sent forth to explore the land returned not, and he sent other men to look for them ; so they sailed to the southward a long time, even for the space of a half year, and they saw not the men. And they came into the land which was exceeding warm, so that the pitch on the seams of the ship was melted, and did run out ; and the men became alarmed, and returned speedily unto their own land.

And Albanas was troubled and perplexed, by reason of the first men not returning ; and he ceased not to search for them for the space of ten years, and he found them not ; and Jeboran returned unto the land of Albanas and abode there.

And Morah, the governor of the land of Osurus, builded an highway unto the mountains as thou goest over unto the land of Biariah, and it was cast up for the height of three cubits length ; and the people trafficked over the highway, and went and came thereon.

And Algoonah caused a highway to be builded into

the great city, and it was done; and the men of the province of Mestus being removed southward from their land, abode on the river which cometh from the eastward; and they had a pleasant and a fruitful land; and they were thirty days' journey to the eastward from the city of Algoonah, and they builded a highway thereto.

And Algoonah caused a bridge of boats to be builded over the great river, and it was done; so they went and came on the bridge of boats which Algoonah had builded.

And Jaban, the son of Biariah, was governor of the province of Biariah, and he sat in the council like unto his father; and he read unto the people of the former history of the people, as we shall see in the next chapter.

CHAPTER XXVI.

And the history of the ancient people of Gehalehmot, read by Jaban, the son of Biariah, was after this wise :

Philetus was governor in the land of Gehalehmot, in the six hundred and tenth age of the world.

Now there were in the land of Gheba certain of the people who kept the great temple of fire, for the people of Gheba worshipped fire ; and the men who kept the temple must needs keep the fire alive, or they died. And the chief priest of the temple was named Exus. He was a young man of great mind, and he stood in the temple continually and ministered there. There were two inner courts there, which all the people might enter ; but there were two other courts, which were farther in, which the people might not enter, for fear of being slain.

And there was still another court which none might enter, save the chief priest of the temple, who was, at this time, Exus. And he went in every sixth hour and fed the sacred fire with fine oil, that it should not die. And if it should die, the tradition of the people was, that all the land of Gheba should be laid waste and utterly destroyed ; and the tradition of the people was, that the sacred fire had been burning for two thousand years ; and at the first it had been brought from the mountains, which are great and high, over against the land of Gheba.

Now the chief priest must needs keep the fire alive, or he should surely die ; and when he went into the inner court of the temple, where the sacred fire was burning, the other priests stripped him of his raiment, that he should take nothing to rekindle the fire, if haply it should be dead.

And he took a lamp and lighted it there, to show the other priests that the fire was still burning ; and with the lamp were lighted other fires, that the people might take thereof unto their dwellings, and so have the fire continually before them.

And Exus went and came in the presence of the priests, and fed the holy fire ; and if the kings of Gheba went forth to war against other kings, there was a lamp lighted at the sacred fire and borne before the people ; and part of the priests of the great temple went with it to tend it ; and if it so happened that the fire was put out, then did the men of Gheba retreat before their enemies.

So the fire was kept burning continually. And Exus was troubled on account thereof, for the fire was growing more feeble every day. And he took double measure of oil and fed the fire ; still it burned very low, and was at length but a spark.

And Exus feared to speak of the matter to the inferior priests and to the people. And every day did the king of Gheba send a messenger for to inquire of the sacred fire, for the people and the king supposed that if the fire should die, then would all the people perish from the earth.

So Exus stayed by the fire, and fed it for half the day and half the night, so at length it burned more brightly for a season.

Now the place where the fire was, was ten cubits long, ten cubits wide, and five cubits high, and the altar thereof was builded of black stone, fine and smooth; and no man knew when it was builded, or when the fire was lighted thereon.

And the court of the temple, wherein the fire was, was not lighted from without, and the priest durst not light any lamp therein; and the darkness therein was great, by reason of the lowness of the fire.

So Exus tended it with great diligence and solicitude, by reason of the tradition of the people; and he must needs light a lamp every day to bring forth unto the people for to give them fire; and the people would take the fire into their houses, and keep it there.

So, on a certain day, as Exus went in for to tend the sacred fire—as he entered the court he must needs always close the portals of each court behind him—as he entered the inner court of the fire, lo, it seemed to be dead, but by carefully perceiving, he saw there was yet a spark then of living, and he blew it, and fed it with oil, and it burned again.

Then the fire burned brightly after a season, and improved daily.

So Exus, when he cleaned the altar of the fire, made a close scrutiny, and found certain tubes leading downward, which fed in the air unto the sacred fire, and by reason of age were they filled up.

So Exus cleansed the tubes, and the fire burned very brightly, so that it lighted the court, and warmed it, as would the sun.

Then, on a certain day, did Exus call the priests of the temple together, and had a feast of rejoicing; and they wist not what made Exus so merry.

Then did the king of Gheba go forth unto battle ; and he was a young king, and full of rashness ; and he came unto the temple and demanded of the priests to admit him into the presence of the sacred fire. And Exus, the chief priest, was in the inner temple tending the fire, and the inferior priests besought the young king to go no farther. But he was hasty, and violent in temper, and drew his sword and vowed to enter into the place of the sacred fire. And the priests durst not oppose him ; and he went on, leaving the portals of the courts open after him.

So Exus heard some one coming and was filled with alarm, not knowing what to do ; so the king came on, and opened the portals of the sacred court, and the wind followed him, and the wind went in and the sacred fire was extinguished. And Exus had a lamp he had just lighted, and he essayed to relight the fire ; but the king at this time hastily closed the portals, and the sacred fire ceased to burn. Then did Exus haste him from thence and left the king in the sacred place ; and Exus took the five hundred priests and fled from the land in the night, in great alarm, for he feared the vengeance of the young king.

So Exus gat him up with the priests and came by night into a desert place among the mountains ; but they first took of the sacrifices of the temple, fruits and meats, and camels.

So they hastened from the land of Gheba and came by chance unto the land of Gehalehmot ; and the people treated them kindly, and gave them to eat, and brought them into the presence of Philetus, the governor. And Exus, being the leader, bowed himself unto

the governor, and spake unto him in the language of Aegyptus, and said, We have come into thy land, O King.

Then did Philetus speak unto him, saying, We are a simple people who tend our flocks and herds, and have no king. I am but one of the people, and must needs work as do my people. Nevertheless, we go not to war and are content to live in peace with all men.

And when Exus heard this, he was greatly pleased, and he opened his mouth and spake thus unto Philetus :

Thy servants have been priests in the land of Gheba, in the great temple of fire, in the chief city of that land ; and the tradition of our people hath been, That if the sacred fire should die, then should the priests be put to death, and all in the land should die by reason of pestilence. Now, this twelve years hath thy servant been chief priest in the great temple, and no eyes have seen it save mine. And the young king of Gheba, being rash and violent, essayed to enter in and light his lamp to go before the host going in to battle. Not desiring to wait for the lamp to be lighted by the priest, as was the custom ; and the wind followed him and extinguished the sacred fire. So thy servants, the priests, were filled with alarm, and have fled down hither, even thirty days' journey, unto the borders of thy land. Now, we pray thee, let us have a portion of thy land, that we die not in the desert ; or rather, we will be the servants of thy people, and labor for them.

Then did Philetus rend his garment, and say, May the pestilence of mice and of flies fall upon me, if I make of thee servants. Lo, the land is before thee ; thou shalt be our brethren, and shall sit down and

rise up as seemeth best unto thee. Go forth, and say where thou wilt abide.

Then was Exus much moved, and Philetus embraced him ; and they abode for a season in that place ; and Philetus set them a portion in the land where it was a pleasant and fertile place. And the five hundred priests went down thither ; and the people gave them beasts, and seed to cast into the earth. And the priests wrought in the fields and were greatly pleased.

Then Philetus saith unto Exus, If it is thy will to continue the worship of the fire, lo, thou shalt do as seemeth best in thy sight.

But Exus answered him, saying :

I do not desire to worship the fire any longer, for I am persuaded that the fire hath no power for good or evil, save as man permitteth it.

And Philetus bid him to do as he saw proper.

Now, the priests had been reared so that they had never known woman. And they had been learned in all the wisdom of the earth. Nevertheless, they yearned to be as the men of the land, and each have him a wife, as did other men.

So Exus went unto Philetus and laid the matter before him.

And it troubled Philetus, for there were not sufficient young virgins in the land. So he wrote a message unto his friend Ragmaethon, the king of Aegyptus. And the king pondered the matter well, and then wrote unto Philetus, saying :

Let the young men come into my land, even the land of Aegyptus ; and let them labor in the land and choose from the daughters of my people, every man a wife ;

and let the matter be secret from the people of Aegyptus.

So the thing pleased Philetus and Exus, and it was done as the king suggested. And they went down into the land of Aegyptus at the time of the harvest and wrought among the people of Aegyptus, all save Exus, who was enamored of the daughter of Philetus; and he took her to wife in the presence of the people, after the manner of the people of Gehalehmot. And the others went down into the land of Aegyptus, and became enamored of the daughters of Aegyptus, and sought to have them to wife.

Now was there a law in the land, that no one should be betrothed unto an alien, save by consent of the king. So the matter was laid before the king, and he consented, if each should first labor in the land for a year; and it was accomplished. And when the year was past the king gave each man a beast, and two changes of raiment, and blessed them; and they went into the land of Gehalehmot and became as the people thereof.

And Philetus waxed old and stricken in years, and his strength failed him.

And Exus brought many useful arts into the land, and he wrought with Aoba, and respected him, for Aoba was a good and just man, and also very wise. Then did all the people love Exus for his wisdom and goodness.

And Philetus died and was buried in the land of Gehalehmot, and Exus was governor in his room.

And Exus went forth and viewed the land, and set bounds to every man's possessions, and set teachers over the people, and learned them the arts which Aoba taught him.

Now in the fifteenth year of the reign of Exus as governor of the people, Aoba gat him up from the midst of the people, and took his sons and his daughters, and his flocks and herds, and went from the land ; *and no man knoweth unto this day whither he went.*

And Exus was exceeding sorry, and mourned by reason of the departure of Aoba from the land.

Now before he removed from the land had Aoba builded an altar of hewn stones, over against the great river ; and the altar was respected by the people, and no man durst tear it down.

But the people increased and multiplied all over the land. And Exus ruled the people with wisdom, and all the people loved him.

Now the land of Aegyptus was a fair land, and a powerful and they were learned in all the wisdom of the earth, and no king durst come down to war therewith ; and the king thereof loved the people of Gehalehmot, and looked upon them as his people.

And he sent unto Exus, saying, Come down hither in the fourth moon of the year, and witness the festivities of my people.

And Exus went down with four-and-twenty camel loads of presents of the produce of the land for to present unto the king. And the king was much pleased, and gave unto Exus a chain of gold and a vestment of blue, of fine linen.

And Exus viewed the festivities of the land ; and when he returned he commanded that the blue vestment should be the vestment of the people, and it was so unto the latest generations.

And when Jaban read unto the people, of the ancient people of Gehalehmot, they were filled with astonishment thereat ; and Algoonah commanded that the history be written on parchment of skins of beasts, fine and white ; and it was done as he commanded.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Now the province of Mestus was to the eastward from the great city of Algoonah ; and they dwelt by the side of the great river that runneth to the westward from the mountains into the great river of Algoonah.

Now there were in the forest there, many vines bearing grapes, and the people took them and tilled them ; and they were large and fine ; and there were much of the vines planted. So there was a man named Tervan, who was a skilful man, and he took of the grapes and made wine ; and the household of Tervan took of the wine and drank thereof, and they became drunken. And while they were drunken they cursed Algoonah, the king, and made riotous actions.

And when Mestus heard thereof he sent and took Tervan and his household and rebuked them, and commanded him to cast the wine out. So he let Tervan go his way ; but he did not as the governor commanded, but at the winter feasts he had a large concourse of his kindred and his neighbors with him ; and he gave them of the wine, and they all became drunken, and they quarreled one with another ; and they became heated and fell upon one another ; and there were four slain.

So the word went forth unto Mestus the governor, and he was filled with sorrow and horror thereat, so that he rent his garment, and cast dust upon his head.

Now when Tervan came to himself, and those who were with him, he was greatly appalled, and they rose up hastily and went forth by night, and came unto the former place of the province of Mestus ; and there were eighty and four men, women and children ; and they took their beasts and provender and came unto the former place ; and they had a sore journey, by reason of the cold.

Nevertheless, they came in safety, and there were houses there, and some granaries of corn which had been left for cases of travelers journeying thither. So they made shift to abide there until the pleasant season should come ; then did Tervan go unto the westward twenty and eight days journey, and halted by the great river.

And they could not cross, so they cast seed into the earth and abode there in terror of the king Algoonah, for they feared his anger ; so they builded houses and abode there for a season.

Then when Algoonah heard of this affair he was much appalled, and smote upon his breast, and said :

Alas, that my people should shed each others blood, and become more foolish than the wild men.

So he made proclamation that whosoever should henceforth, make wine, should be accursed ; and the proclamation went forth, and the people respected it.

Now the produce of the land was very great, and there was great labor in threshing the grain.

So the wise men of the house of Kinar devised means to lighten the labors of the people ; so they communed with one another, and after the seed was cast into the earth they went forth and instructed the people, how they might build threshing floors ; and one was builded

near the great city of Algoonah, and one was builded in the province of Gonath, and the threshing floors were six thousand cubits in compass, and they were laid strong and smooth.

So they were builded after the plan of the men of the house of Kinar, and there was made implements to beat out the corn from the straw ; and when the harvest was past, the people brought their substance thither and it was found that they made greater speed than ever before.

So they made other threshing floors, even greater than these, and it was a great convenience unto the people.

So Algoonah sought not to follow Tervan or to punish him, but was sorrowful on account thereof.

And the king commanded that there be another great feast established ; and it was to be in the season of the gathering of the harvest, and was called the Meshnonah or the feast of the threshing floors.

So it was observed by all the people.

Then at the time of the midwinter feasts did Jaban read unto the people, of the history of the ancient men of Gehalehmot.

And on the twenty fifth year of the reign of Exus, as governor of the people, did Ragmaethon the king of Aegyptus die, and his son Rmabykos sit on his throne in his stead ; and Rmabykos was of the age of eight years when he began to reign, and his uncle Aesopus ruled for him.

And Aesopus was cruel and crafty, and he desired the death of Rmabykos, so he bribed the king's servants, and the doctors of the king's chamber ; and he intended to slay the young king in his bed ; but the

mother of the lad took him secretly and fled in disguise from the land ; and she fled by night toward the land of Gehalehmot, and happily came in with a caravan, going with merchandise down into the land of Gehalehmot.

And she made as if she was going down to dwell in the land.

And she feared to reveal unto the governor of the land, who they were ; so she turned aside and dwelt among the shepherds in the plain over against the great river of the land of Gehalehmot.

And Rmahykos tended the flocks and wrought with the shepherds ; and no man knew him.

And when Aesopus found that the young king was gone, he made diligent search all over the land ; but the mother of the king was cunning, and he found him not.

So he gave out word that the young king had died ; and his cunning men made an image thereof of wax, and laid it in a coffin, and it was buried among the kings' sepulchres.

So he was proclaimed king by the name of Merohykos ; and he was cruel and crafty, and laid heavy burdens on the people. And he claimed tribute of the land of Gehalehmot. But when the tax gatherers of Merohykos came into the land, the governor laid before them the ancient parchment of the good king Hykos, of Aegyptus ; and the tax gatherers went unto their own land, and told of the matter unto the king. And when he had heard their report he was filled with wrath, and he smote off the heads of the tax gatherers.

And when the next year was come he sent other tax gatherers, who had witnessed the death of those who

went before them, and sent word further unto Exus, saying :

Unless thou sendest the tribute of the land, I will surely come down with mine army and lay the whole land waste and desolate, and make your habitations the abode of doleful creatures ; even the beasts of the forest.

Then Exus called together the heads of the people and laid the matter before them. And the wisest of the men said (who also was of the descendants of those who came from the land of Phœnicia) :

If we pay this tribute, lo, the king will continually spoil our land, so we will be made desolate at the last. Lo, our arms are strong, and let us make ready and meet the great king, and fall before our own habitations.

So Exus sent away the tax gatherers, and refused to pay the tribute. And then Exus sent forth and called unto the heads of the people, and made ready for to go down and fight with the king of Aegyptus.

And the men were gathered in companies to the number of three thousand. And the men of Gehalehmot were of great strength and endurance—and they continually slang stones and shot with large and strong arrows—and made ready for battle.

And the lad Asis, who was Rmahykos, the young king, went forth, being twelve years old, and desired for to do battle with the men. And Exus tried to prevail against him ; but Asis would not be delayed. So Exus took him near unto him, and treated him gently.

And at the time of the yearning of the lambs, the king of Aegyptus, even Merohykos, gathered an army of forty thousand, and came in haste unto the land of

Gehalemot for to lay it waste. And he journeyed by way of the desert, and came at night unto the land.

Now the men of Aegyptus were very loath to go down and spoil the land. Nevertheless, they went, being afraid of the power of the king.

Now they came near, and Merohykos said within himself :

I will come over in the night and fall upon the people, so they shall be scattered like unto sheep.

And he drew near unto the borders of the land ; and when the sun shone in the morning very early, it cast its beams on the waters with which the people watered their lands withal ; and the water in the trenches was red like unto blood, by reason of the redness of the early beams of the sun.

And the army of Aegyptus, and the king thereof, looked, and they were filled with terror. And all the men of the army said :

Lo, it is the blood of our brethren !

And they turned about and fled with great fear, and the king could not turn them back. And they rested not until they came unto the plain over against the great river.

And the army of Aegyptus went back into their own land ; and the king got him other men, and came again for to lay waste the land the next year.

So when Exus heard that the army of the king of Aegyptus was at hand, he gathered the people together, and sent the women back, and made him ready to make what shift he might for to fight the army of the king.

So when the morning was come, he looked forth unto the borders of the land and saw the army of Aegyptus ; and the army of Aegyptus turned and fled,

and he knew not the reason ; for he thought him not of the sun shining upon the waters, or that it would terrify the army of Aegyptus.

So he knew not what they might do, or the reason of their flight. So he sent forth spies, who followed the army of Aegyptus near unto their own land ; and the spies returned and told Exus of the return of the army.

So he supposed the king had repented him of destroying the land ; and he sent every man unto his place, and went in peace unto his own house. Nevertheless, he bid the people be ready to come forth again when he should call them.

And on the next year Merohykus made ready a greater army, and came down to destroy the land ; and the king led the army himself, for he distrusted the people, for he knew of the good will of his people unto the people of Gehalehmot. So he came down and encamped over against the land ; and he entered the land in the day time, and went into the land and encamped a half day's journey in the land.

Now, Exus had the people on horses, and they fell back from before the army of Aegyptus, for Exus desired not to meet the king on the plain, but among the hills. And Exus divided the people in two parts, and one part went secretly by night and went in behind the army of Aegyptus. And the lad Asis was with those who went behind. And Exus gave the commander strict charge to keep the lad in safety. Now, Asis rode upon a white horse, and he had the garment of a shepherd of Gehalehmot on, and under it the raiment of the kings of Aegyptus as they sat upon their thone. Now, the mother of the lad clad

him in this fashion, and bid him what to do. So he went with the portion of the men in the rear of the army of Aegyptus.

Now, when the morning was come, the king of Aegyptus drew up the army in array of battle; and as the sun rose he moved forth to meet the men of Gehalehmot, who were in his front; and the men of Gehalehmot closed in upon him, and rode within a bow shot of the army of Aegyptus before and behind; and the men of Aegyptus were loath to begin the battle with the people, and they were heavy of heart. So Merohykos lifted himself in his chariot and blew a trumpet, and commanded that the army fall upon the people of the land.

But the men of Gehalehmot were too nimble to permit them to come near them. And on a sudden the lad Asis rode upon his white horse and came into the army of Aegyptus from the rear. And all the army wondered to see such a youth in battle. And when he came among the men of Aegyptus he cast off his shepherd's garment, and the captains of the hosts knew him. And Asis lifted up his voice with his greatest strength and said:

Behold the anointed king of Aegyptus. And there was a great shout in the army of Aegyptus; and the men gathered about him, and the chief captains did homage unto him. And the king heard the uproar and knew not the reason thereof. So he turned him and bid the people go forth and smite the men of Gehalehmot.

And the king wore the crown of Aegyptus on his head. And Rmahykos commanded Phofaron, the captain of the host, to smite Merohykos; and Phofaron

took a spear and ran it through Merohykos as he stood in his chariot, and he fell therein and died.

So Phofaron called back the people, and set the crown of Aegyptus on the head of Rmahykos; and Phofaron blew a trumpet, and the people halted in their place.

Now when Exus saw the movements of the army he was filled with amazement, and so were his people; and every man stood in his place, and looked at the army of Aegyptus; for they made no movement to fight with the people of Gehalehmot.

So while they beheld, Rmahykos sent an emissary unto Exus; and the emissary came alone and without arms; so Exus suffered him to approach, and he came apace. And he said unto Exus, The young king Rmahykos greeteth thee, and desireth to make peace with thee immediately, which shall endure unto the latest generations.

And Exus was filled with amazement, and he knew not what to do, thinking the king desired to take him by craft, and he sent a trusty man to see. And he went, and after a short space returned, saying, Come and see the great mystery of the men of Aegyptus.

And then Exus came, and certain trusty men with him. And the men of Aegyptus had laid their arms upon the ground. And when Exus came he saw Rmahykos sitting in the king's chariot, and a crown upon his head, and the purple robe of the kings of Aegyptus on him; and all the men were doing obeisance unto him.

So Exus was filled with amazement, and did obeisance unto Rmahykos, not knowing what he did, so great was his astonishment.

And Rmahykos said, Fear not, my old friend ; thou art a good and true man, and the welfare of thy people is thy great care ; Lo, arise and let us make a peace which shall endure unto the latest generations.

And Rmahykos told unto Exus of all that had happened, and of the usurpation of Merohykos.

And they made a peace there.

And Rmahykos turned him and marched the army out from the land, and went unto the place where his mother was, and took her and went forth unto the land of Aegyptus.

Now there were many of the chief men of the king's household who were wicked and deceitful men, like unto Merohykos ; and when the army returned Rmahykos took them, to the number of two score, and put them to death without mercy.

And the body of Merohykos was buried on the plain outside the borders of the land of Gehalehmot.

And Rmahykos sat upon the throne of Aegyptus, and ruled the land in peace. And he was fourteen years old ; and he sat upon the throne of Aegyptus sixty and eight years.

So the land of Gehalehmot had peace, and every man returned unto his labor ; and there was no man slain in battle save the false king Merohykos ; and the land increased and multiplied.

Thus did Jaban read unto the people.

And Jeboran, the king's son, dwelt in the land of Albanas. And the province of Albanas waxed rich and increased in numbers continually ; for the men of other provinces came thither, and Albanas gave them a por-

tion of the land. Nevertheless, the province of Gonath increased also; and there was much substance in the land, for the people set the residue thereof in granaries, if haply there might be famine in the land.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Now Jaban prepared the ancient histories of the men of Gehalehmot, and read unto the people from time to time.

And Exus did govern the people with wisdom and moderation ; and the young king Rmahykos of Aegyptus, was exceedingly friendly unto the men of Gehalehmot, and every year he sent presents unto Exus, and unto the chief men of Gehalehmot.

So Exus looked over the land, and lo, it was in peace from one border even unto the other ; and he called the grand council of the people together, and the council was great.

And there was difficulty in getting the people to come together and observe order ; and the messenger of the king of Aegyptus stood there and witnessed the disorder of the people, and when he returned unto his own land, he told unto the king thereof.

And the king caused his cunning workmen to make a trumpet of gold, and he inscribed thereon the names of the governor and chief men of Gehalehmot ; and he sent it down and gave it unto the governor, for to call the people to silence ; and thus it was that the golden trumpet was the means of calling silence in the councils of the people through all generations.

Then there came into the land one who was of the people of Gheba.

And Exus was filled with astonishment to see him, for it had been forty years since he left the land.

Nevertheless, Exus told the man not who he was until he had taken him and proved him; so the young man's name was Senoba. And Senoba was taken in the governor's household as a chamberlain of the temple; and on a certain day Exus had him in, and told him who he was, and desired to know how the people of Gheba had prospered since that time.

And Senoba spake, and said, Wonderful things have been in the land since thou left it; but first, let me tell thee how I came down thither; know thee therefore, that I am the brother of the king, and I was born in the twentieth year of his reign, for my father was the prime minister, even the father of the king, and the king brought me unto his house, and I was as one of his servants.

Now there was one of the chamberlains of the king's house whose name was Ahak, and he was a just and good man.

So Ahak instructed me in all the knowledge and wisdom of Aegyptus, and of Gheba; and this he did from stealth, for the king desired not that I should be learned, for he feared my influence on the people.

Nevertheless, I increased in wisdom and learning, and Ahak sat me in the room of the books for to keep it; and I did secretly read of all the wisdom of the nations of the earth.

Now there was one who at the time of the great feast of the sun, did recite before the king, poetry; and I heard the poetry; and when the next year came around, the poet of the king came into the room of the

books, and he was sore distressed, and could not write, for the subject had left his mind.

So it happened that I had written a poem for to amuse my mind, and written it on parchment, and the tenor thereof was of the ancient history of the people of the world, and how the sacred fire came down from the great mountains ; and I caused the poet of the king to swear that he would never reveal the author thereof.

So I read it in his presence ; and when I read it, the poet was delighted thereat, and desired it of me to read before the king.

So when the time was come for the great feast of the sun, the king called for the poet, and he stood up, and read the poem I had written.

And when the king heard thereof, he made proclamation, that the writer of the poem should ride on a horse through the streets of the great city, and a herald should proclaim that he was second man in the kingdom ; and the king swore thereto by the sacred fire.

Then was the poet greatly alarmed, and shook with fear ; and the king saw the reason thereof, and he was greatly angered at the poet, for he saw the poet wrote not the poem.

Now it was death to lie unto the king ; so the poet durst not tell, by reason of his vow to me. And the king put him in torture until he revealed the writer of the poem ; so he told the king the whole matter, and the king kept his oath, and set me on a horse, and caused a herald to proclaim before me that I was the second man unto the king in the kingdom ; and thus he did all the time of the great feast.

Now Ahak came unto me privately, and bid me depart in haste, by way of the desert by night, for he

knew the king would surely do me hurt; so he gave unto me a camel, and I departed hastily and came into the land of Aegyptus; and I heard of thy land, and came up hither, and entered thy borders.

Then was Exus much moved at the story, and said unto him, Thy name shall, hereafter, be Manos, for thou art of great wisdom; and he prayed Manos to go on and tell of the history of the people, after the sacred fire was dead, when Exus left that land.

So Manos spake as follows:

When thou didst depart from the land, the sacred fire, as thou knowest, was dead in the great temple of fire. And the young king feared not, but went forth from the temple and got a brand from the house of an husbandman, and he laid it on the sacred altar, and it burned brightly. And he set new priests over the fire, and gave them charge concerning it. But the fire was strange and the priests understood it not. And there was great calamity in the land, for the only son of the king died; and the pestilence broke out all over the land.

Then did the king make sacrifice on the sacred altar of the only child which was born unto him during the pestilence. And when this was done, the tradition of the people saith that the sacred fire descended and rested upon the altar. And the priests went in and ministered unto it as thou didst when thou wast the high priest. And it has since burned continually. Notwithstanding, more than one-third of all the people died by reason of the pestilence; and the king hath not been of sound mind since.

And when he had done speaking, Exus spake, saying: I believe not in the fire, save as a useful creature of

convenience unto the children of men ; and as for the pestilence, lo, this land hath twice been desolated with pestilence, and no man could see any reason for it. So Exus took Manos and set him among the people, and he forsook the customs of the men of Gheba, and became as one of the people.

And the land was at rest, for no king of the earth came into it for to despoil it after Merohykos, the false king of Aegyptus. And Manos went forth, and was among the people, and the people respected him for his wisdom and cunning. So that there was no one so much beloved as he. And Exus was seventy and eight years old when Manos came into the land.

And when Algoonah looked forth and beheld the land of Mezzinaroth, he saw that it was a goodly land and in peace. And nothing troubled Algoonah save the actions of Tervan, and those who were with him ; and he wist not what had become of them.

Now Tervan, and those who were with him, abode by the great river to the westward from the lake country, where the province of Mestus first was. And they staid there until the winter ; and when the great river was bridged by the frost, did Tervan arise and those who were with him, and first builded houses on the farther side thereof, and they had things needful. And when the pleasant season of the year had come, did Tervan go thirty days' journey to the westward and abode by a small river in that land. And the land was a goodly land, and brought forth abundantly, and he abode there. And when the people of Tervan had rest, after casting seed into the earth, Tervan called them together, and stood up, and spake unto them in heaviness of spirit, saying :

This day hath justice been done unto me and unto thee, for we disobeyed the governor and the king, and did very foolishly and wickedly, by reason of drinking the wine; and we are outcast in the land and durst no more go unto our fellows. Nevertheless, let us keep the customs and manners of the good king, Algoonah, as he would desire for us to do; and let us have a council of the people and have laws and regulations, and have our feasts, as did Algoonah. And all the people said unto Tervan, We will do as pleaseth thee to do.

So after the time of harvest, Tervan called a council of the people, and they made laws like unto the laws of the men of Kaiah.

Now the men of Tervan prospered in the land greatly, and they did no evil, but sorrowed for what had occurred in the land of Mestus. Therefore, they lived in that place continually.

Now at the time of the feast of the threshing floors, did Algoonah go down into the province of Gonath, and the province waxed great and mighty. And there was great abundance in the land, so that there was no lack of anything needful. And the king kept the feast in the province of Gonath. And his cunning workmen had builded boats, so that he might go from one province to the other on the waters; and this he did as occasion demanded.

And Jeboran dwelt in the province of Albanas, and Albanas builded him a palace, the like whereof hath not been seen on earth. And the palace was of stone, fine and white, and dressed smooth like unto glass; and there were pillars, and columns, and fine architecture around it; and the roof thereof was silver, pure

and fine ; and the compass thereof was six score cubits on a side.

And all the years the palace was building was thirty. And the land of Albanas was a land famous for gold and for silver, for the people delved in the earth and dug up the gold and silver. And the province of Osurus also was very prosperous. And Morah, the governor thereof, was returned from his sojourn in the land of Albanas.

And he had communed with his brother, even Albanas, and he sent unto Algoonah, the king, for permission to build new ships. And Algoonah bid him do as seemed best unto him.

So Morah builded fifty new ships, and Albanas builded fifty others ; and they went and came between the two provinces.

And the ships were full, and there was much traffic among the people. And the men of every province had the fine fruits and choice merchandise of the men of Albanas.

And Galbronus was chief man of all the ships, and he went once a year and came into the land of Osurus. And the governors, Morah and Albanas, laid a tribute of one-twentieth part of each ship's merchandise. And the tribute was sent unto Algoonah, the king. And Algoonah laid the money in the temple of Kinar, for to accomplish the works of the book of Kinar, when it should come the time.

And thirty years after the death of Kinar, the priests of the temple went forth and commanded the people to build mounds ; and it was done as they directed. And there was one builded in each province ; and the meaning thereof was hidden from the people.

And one was builded in the province of Gonath, over against the great river, and it was ten years before it was completed. Nevertheless, the people wrought at it continually. And the people went forth, and followed their own occupations after the mounds were builded.

CHAPTER XXIX.

The province of Albanas was a great province, for the people came thither from every land; and there was builded there a palace for Jeboran, the young prince. And Jeshurim asked of Algoonah to go down thither; and Algoonah consented thereto. So he got him up and went down thither. And Jeshurim was ninety and six years old; so he journeyed to the province of Osurus.

And Morah, the governor, came over to meet him, and paid him great honors, for all the people respected Jeshurim.

So Morah took him in, and sat him at his own table, and lodged him sumptuously. And when Jeshurim had viewed the land he departed on a ship prepared for him, and came without accident unto the land of Albanas.

Now Jeboran and Albanas had heard of his coming, and went down unto the place of landing together with a great multitude of the people; for many of them had never seen Jeshurim, and they had often heard of the fame and good deeds of Jeshurim.

So he was welcomed by Jeboran and Albanas, and they brought him with songs and rejoicing unto the great city and palace.

And the mind of Jeshurim was filled with wonder when he had seen the temple and the city,

So they had him in, and when he was rested he gat him into a chariot prepared for him, and went forth and viewed all the land, and all the great works thereof; and they showed unto him the highways running through the land; and the bridges of stone; and the fountains of waters, which the people had made.

And Jeshurim was pleased, for he saw the land was an exceeding pleasant and comely land.

And Jeshurim said: Blessed be the children of the province of Albanas, and blessed be their children's children, for they are loyal and true, and their land is one of the fairest in all the earth; and may the honors of all men come upon them.

So he abode there for the space of a year; and while he was gone from his place did Erech govern the people of his province in his stead.

Now Erech was of a good mind and very wise. And he looked forth over the land and saw that the beasts of burden and of labor did go over the fields, and destroyed much corn and fruit of the earth.

So he bade the people set a terminus to their possessions, and build hurdles around their possessions to keep the beasts out; and it was done. And he left highways between for people to pass through.

And much more that was wise and beneficial did he do.

So Algoonah looked upon Erech and saw that he was a proper person, and possessed of great wisdom; and he made a resolution concerning him, but he kept his peace.

So Jeshurim returned from the land of Albanas.

And the people were filled with sorrow by reason of his leaving; so they gave unto him a golden ewer, and

he took it with him, and he journeyed unto the presence of Osurus, and entered safely into the house of Morah, the governor. Then did he rest him for certain days and returned unto the land of Jeshurim, by way of the mountains and the plain.

And there were with him eight score men for to keep him.

And as he journeyed through the plain did Jeshurim descend from his chariot for to walk, as he was fatigued by riding; and as he walked on among the people who were with him, lo, a serpent at the wayside stung him in the foot, and Jeshurim was filled with pain by reason of the sting of the beast; and it was in the fifth hour of the day; and he became so much worse that the people stayed and set up a tent, and ministered unto him; but he grew worse, and at last he spake unto them that were about him, and said, I shall surely die, even as did all who came up from the land of Gehalehmot, save Algoonah and two score others. And the people were filled with sorrow and bemoaned greatly.

And Jeshurim called them and bid one write what he should say. And he wrote unto Algoonah the king, and said :

Mine eyes shall behold thee no more; but let not the remembrance of Jeshurim perish from the earth. Lo, I have no son to commemorate my name. Let there be a monument set in the valley of the great river, over against the province and the city of Jeshurim; and let there be inscribed thereon my name and history. And much more did he cause to be written, which was sealed up and hidden away.

So Jeshurim died, and the men who were with him

buried him in the plain by the mountains ; and they set up a sepulchre over him by the great highway, as thou goest down into the province of Biariah. And all the years of Jeshurim were ninety and seven.

Now, Jeshurim was of the land of Assyria, and he was of the household of the king, even Merodach, the great king ; and he was of a dark countenance. Nevertheless, he was the best man in all the land for wisdom, and valor and goodness. He was first called Guyges ; but the great king was greatly angered at him, and would have slain him ; but he departed unto the people of Gehalehmot, and became one of them ; and when the people were in the land of Mozman he became enamored of the daughters of the people of Mozman, and took one of them to wife. But when Amarah, the good king died, and Aristoblah, the wicked king drave the people forth ; then did Guyges slay the wicked king, and went forth with the men of Kaiah, and left his wife in the land of Mozman, and never had another wife. And he lived alone in the land all his days. So when Kaiah the king came to die he changed his name unto Jeshurim, for the king liked not the speech of Assyria. And the meaning of Jeshurim in the speech of Kaiah is one of good courage.

Then after the death of Kaiah was Jeshurim the chief captain of all the people in the stead of Algoonah, who was made king.

So the men who went with Jeshurim came sadly unto the place of Algoonah ; and they knew the king would be filled with sorrow. So they disputed among themselves who should go in and tell the king ; for no one desired to see the sorrow of the king. So one who was of a wise mind, said, Let us all go in and tell unto

the king the story of the death of Jeshurim. So they came in before the king as he sat in his chamber in the morning; and every one had rent his garment and cast dust on his head. And the king was filled with alarm, and asked them saying: Hath evil befallen any one?

And the men spake unto the king, saying, Jeshurim is no more. And he went on and told the king concerning the whole matter.

Then did the king smite on his breast, and fell to the ground, and was as one dead, so that he could not be comforted.

Then did Atomia, the wife of Algoonah, come in and caused the king to be laid on his bed. And he would take no consolation. And he sent out proclamation unto all the people that there should be no work done in all the land for the space of ten days; and the people should mourn for Jeshurim; and that there should be mourning for forty days more. Yet, they should do needful labor.

Then went forth the decree, and all the people observed it in truth. And when the fifty days were at an end, Algoonah went forth unto the place of the burial of Jeshurim and wept there.

So he returned and read the last letter of Jeshurim. And Algoonah builded a monument in the valley of the great river, as Jeshurim desired. And he inscribed thereon: Jeshurim, which was Guyges, faithful and true, which came out from the land of Assyria, which lieth in the land of Ascia, over against the great sea, and abode with the people of Kaiah. Let the men of all generations know of the goodness and faithfulness of Jeshurim. And the inscription was in the speech of

Kaiah, in the speech of Aegyptus, and in the speech of Assyria.

Now, when the tidings of the death of Jeshurim entered the land of Albanas, the governor set up a monument unto Jeshurim and made inscriptions thereon. And when the days of mourning was fully past, Algoonah called the people of Jeshurim together, and took Erech, and laid the mantle of Jeshurim on his shoulders; and caused proclamation to be made, that Erech should be governor in the land. And it pleased the people, so that they were comforted, and each man went unto his business.

Then did Algoonah send unto Jeboran to come up and abide with him, to comfort him for the death of Jeshurim. So Jeboran took his wife and large attendance of servants, and abode with his father in the great city of Algoonah. So the king was consoled, and wept no more for Jeshurim.

And the history of the ancient people of Gehalehmot, written by Jaban, was as follows:

When Exus was old did the king of Assyria die in his land, and the daughter of the king of Assyria reigned in his stead. And the name of the king's daughter was Semarimus; and she was of bold and warlike disposition, and went forth and fell upon the lands of the earth and smote the people severely; so that her name was a terror unto all the people of the earth.

So Semarimus was seventeen years old when she began to reign; and she reigned forty and six years in the land of Assyria; and she had cause of war against the people of Tsur; and the land of Tsur was beyond the land of Gehalehmot. So she went up thither, and rode before the army of Assyria, and subdued all

the land of Tsur, and laid tribute thereon, and was returning unto her own land. So as she came over against the land of Gehalehmot she tarried by the great river, and inquired what manner of people abode in the land.

Now Semarimus had the king of Tsur chained to her chariot; and she sent messengers and made as if she would turn in thither and overrun the land. So the messengers came unto Exus the governor, and inquired concerning the land, and told unto Exus that the great queen with her army was over against the land.

Then Exus arose and gat him presents of spices and fine woods, and golden vessels, and said, I will go out and speak unto the great queen myself, lest haply she come in and spoil the land. So he went forth and stayed a half day's journey, and sent messengers, telling her that he was coming to speak with the queen.

So the messengers went, and told the queen, saying, The governor of this land cometh to speak with thee. So the queen made ready to meet him; and he came apace and drew unto the place of the encampment of the army of Assyria; and the queen sat in her royal tent.

And Exus, with the heads of the people, came near and bowed unto the queen; and when she saw the governor, she was struck with respect for his venerable appearance, for he was very old, and his hair and beard were white, like unto wool. Nevertheless, was he not bowed by reason of years; and the queen spake unto him, saying:

Out of curiosity have I tarried here for to see what manner of people abode in this land; speak and let me hear thy history.

Then did Exus open his mouth, and told unto Semarimus the queen, all the history of the people, and how they came into the land, and how they were a simple and childlike people, and did no hurt unto any man, and lived in peace with all the nations. And nothing of any import was hid from her.

And Semarimus was greatly moved, and sware that she would be a friend unto the people of Gehalehmot through all time ; and she made a treaty of peace and friendship with all the men of Gehalehmot.

And she spake unto Exus, saying, Ask anything of me and I will grant it, even if it be the tenth part of the land of Assyria. Now Exus had looked upon the king of Tsur, whom the queen had captive, and the king was very old, and much spent by reason of the cruel treatment of the queen of Assyria.

And Exus said, Give me I pray thee the captive king whom thou hast chained to thy chariot. And when the queen heard the request, she liked it not. Nevertheless, for the sake of her vow she unloosed the bands of the king, and gave him unto the men who were with Exus ; then she saluted Exus, and gave command that the army of Assyria march into their own land, and she departed unto her own land.

Now when the old king of Tsur was given unto Exus, he was filled with alarm, and he thought him that he should be further tortured ; but Exus took off his chains, and washed him, and set him in a chariot, and brought him into his own house, and bade the servants treat him gently and kindly, for he was an anointed king.

So he gained strength and recovered from his ill treatment. And Exus found one who was of the mer-

chants, who spake with the king of Tsur, and bid him be of good courage, for he should surely return unto his own land.

So the king blessed Exus, and made a treaty of friendship with him, and told him that the queen overcame him by treachery, for she came into his land when the people were not prepared for war, and encamped against his chief city with all her army, and brake down the walls thereof, and took him captive, and then departed before his people could prepare for battle.

So the king of Tsur sent messengers unto his own land. And the son of the king returned with the messengers. And when he saw his father alive and in good condition, he fell on his neck and wept long.

So the king departed unto his own land, first giving unto Exus his signet, and bidding him keep it, for it might be of great benefit unto the people of Gehalehmot.

And Exus was much pleased ; and his mind was satisfied, in that he had peace with two other nations, even the land of Assyria and Tsur.

CHAPTER XXX.

And it came to pass that Exus, the governor of the land of Gehalehmot, was very old and much stricken in years, so that his strength departed from him, and he laid him down upon his bed, and arose not.

So he called forth the elder and chief men of the people, and said :

I go hence, and my place among you shall be vacant. Lo, I have been the governor of this people these many years, and in all things have I done justly among the people ; and if any man can say aught else let him now speak.

And all the elders said, Yea, thou hast wrought justice and good amongst us, and no man hath aught to say against thee.

Then spake Exus, I desire that Manos, who is a youth of great wisdom, shall be governor in my stead.

And the people were pleased thereat, and called in Manos, and laid the blue vestment on him and chose him for the governor who should be after Exus. Then when Exus saw that Manos was agreeable unto the people, he sent all them out, and called in Manos alone, and said :

I have somewhat to tell thee which is very wonderful ; mark it well, and remember it unto the end of thy life, for thou must commit the same unto thy successor. And Manos stooped himself unto Exus, and he

whispered in his ear ; and when Manos heard, he was overcome with amazement and wonder, so that he heeded not that Exus had ceased speaking, and was lying upon his bed already dead.

So he came to himself and called the attendants, and, lo, the old governor was dead ; and the whole people made great lamentations over him, for he was a good man, and just. And they found on his neck on a golden chain, a small stone clear like unto crystal, and within the stone was written words which no man could read ; and whatsoever way thou turnest it, the writing within would change.

So Manos took the stone, for he knew of the import thereof.

So they buried Exus beside Philetus, the governor ; and it was in the way of the plain, as thou goest down unto the great river of the land.

Now Rmahykos, the king of Aegyptus, had a great feast, and all the nobles and princes of Aegyptus were there ; and they drank wine and read of ancient histories of Aegyptus. And there were gathered together all the great men of the land ; and as they sat at meat the king's countenance changed, and he commanded to be brought to his bed ; and he laid thereon and died ; for a servant, whose father had created a tumult and the king had caused to be put to death, put poison of hemp in the king's wine, so that he died.

And Keeops, the brother of the king, sat on the throne of Aegyptus in the stead of Rmahykos.

Now Keeops was a mighty man of valor and wisdom and energy, so that no king in all the land hath been like unto Keeops ; for he raised the land of Aegyptus to the highest pitch of power and glory.

So Keeops was king ; and he was twenty and three years old when he began to reign.

Now Keeops looked forth and saw the great monuments which his fathers had begun, and he set sixty thousand men for to build them ; and he built to the height of three hundred cubits. And Keeops laid the foundations of the city of Theba, and builded a city which for splendor hath not been equalled since that time. And he builded two large images in the plain over against the great river of that country. And all the works which Keeops did were very great and marvelous ; and the history thereof hath not been read at any time.

Now on a certain day did Keeops, the king, command his scribes to relate unto him of the history of the other kings ; and they related unto him. So he commanded them to relate of the history of his brother, even Rmahykos.

So they told him how that, when Rmahykos was a child, did his mother flee into a strange land, by reason of the treachery of the uncle of the king ; and that the men of the land were very kind unto the young prince, and treated him with great consideration ; and, further, how that Merohykos, the false king, knew not of the young king being there, but went down with an army, and attempted to gather tribute of the shepherd people, so that he might oppress them ; and how that Rmahykos went among the army of Aegyptus, and discovered himself unto the army, and slew the false king, and made a treaty with the governor of the shepherd people.

And when Keeops heard thereof he was greatly amazed, and sent unto the old chief captain of the

army, who still lived ; and he came in and bowed himself unto the king.

And the king asked him concerning these things.

Yea, my lord the king, this happened as thy scribes have related unto thee.

Then did Keeops send ambassadors into the land, with a parchment of peace, and made a treaty with the governor thereof, and sent, saying, Anything that the king of Aegyptus can accomplish for thee, fear not to make it known.

So he made peace with the people. And this was when Manos began to reign as governor in the land of Gehalehmot.

So Manos was governor in the land of Gehalehmot, and he wrought with the people, and was among them continually ; and he went forth in the land and saw all that transpired therein. And he saw that the writing of the people was unwieldy and slow, for they wrote after the manner of the land of Aegyptus.

So he made new writing, which was very simple, and taught it unto the people. And he gathered together the traditions of the people and caused them to be written in a book, and laid away. So he separated the true from the false, and set it in a book, even the history of the ancient people of all nations.

Now, there was much stuff in the land, even corn and produce of the earth, as well as merchandise and coins of the men of Aegyptus.

Now, there was a people who lived beyond the land of Tsur, who were the men of Atlia, and they were robbers, and very fierce and cruel ; and they heard by chance of the riches of the men of Gehalehmot, and that there was no army, neither fighting men among

them. And the men of Atlia were minded to come down and fall upon the land and spoil it, when the pleasant season of the year was come.

So the men of Atlia made ready, and there was one who was chamberlain unto the young king of Tsur, for the old king had died. And the chamberlain stood before the king every day, and told him of what happened among the nations of the earth. And the chamberlain had a brother who came down from the land of Atlia; and he told his brother so and so. Then did the chamberlain tell the king that the men of Atlia were preparing to go down and spoil the land of Gehalehmot as soon as the rivers subsided, in the spring time of the year.

Then was the king interested, and he bid the chamberlain to read unto him of his father, and he did so; and he read how the king's father had been ransomed from the hands of the queen of Assyria by the governor of the land of Gehalehmot, and how that the governor had treated him with great kindness, and returned him unto his own place.

Then did the young king arise and make an oath, That might there happen to him, all the evils of Loh, and more also, if he did not protect the people of the land of Gehalehmot.

So he sent forth proclamation through all the land of Tsur, that the men of the land should come forth unto battle, even to the number of an hundred thousand. And the proclamation went forth, and all the men of that land came unto the city of the king. And the king made ready to battle.

Now the land of Atlia was a great land, and the people were very numerous. Nevertheless, they were

not valiant in battle, save as they should fall upon a defenceless people.

On a certain time was there brought before the king of Aegyptus, even Keeops, a merchant, who was condemned to die, by reason of using false measure unto the people. And he had traveled throughout all the land; and he stood before the king for to receive this sentence of punishment, and the king commanded that he should surely die. Then the merchant rent his garment and said, One little evil is punished, and the great evil the people of Atlia doeth goeth free; for he had heard thereof in his traveling.

Then heard the king what the merchant said, and the curiosity of the king was excited, and he bid the merchant relate what the people of Atlia had done. And the merchant spake, saying: How can I speak, seeing I am about to be put to death, and my time is nearly spent?

Then the king bid him speak, and if the matter was of importance to the king, then should the merchant not die but live. So he opened his mouth and spake before the king, saying:

Thy servant is a merchant and traveleth unto the uttermost parts of the earth for the merchandise of the people, and I came unto the land of Atlia for gums and spices; and lo, the people were preparing to go down and spoil the defenceless land of Gehalehmot and kill the men thereof, and carry off the produce of the land.

Then when the king heard what the merchant said, he was greatly amazed, and sware that the men of Gehalehmot should be protected, if the whole land of Aegyptus was laid waste. So he sent forth the officer

of the king's household, and ordered the chief captain to go forth with two hundred thousand men, and armaments of chariots and horsemen, and fall upon the men of Atlia, and drive them from the land, and go up in haste; so it was done.

Now, the men of Tsur went forth and came over against the borders of the land of Gehalehmot; and the young king sent one who was familiar with the speech of Gehalehmot, and told the governor, even Manos, of what had happened; then was the governor pleased, and sent forth an hundred camel loads of provender unto the men of Tsur, and called the people together; but the king of Tsur desired him not to take the men of the land for to war, as he desired to smite the people of Atlia himself.

Then Manos opened the graneries of the land, and sent unto the men of Tsur as their necessities demanded.

So at the end of the third month of the year, the men of Atlia came down like unto the flies of the land for multitude; and they came by way of the north-eastward; and the men of Tsur fell upon them and smote them heavily, so that they divided and turned to the westward, and came by way of the river southward, and were spoiling the land.

Then came up the hosts of Aegyptus, and saw the men of Atlia, and they encompassed them about in the plain; and the battle waxed hot, so that neither prevailed.

So on the going down of the sun, the men of Atlia retreated toward their own land; and the men of Tsur had followed them and were encamped a day's journey behind them.

So the men of Atlia met the men of Tsur in a val-

ley as the morning came on, and the men of Tsur fell upon them in the vehemence of their spirit, and the battle was in the valley. Then came up the army of Aegyptus and saw the battle; and supposed it to be the men of Gehalehmot; so they fell on their rear, and smote them foot and skull. And the men of Tsur bore mightily on them, so there fell three fourths of all the men of Atlia that day in the valley, for they could not get out; but in the darkness they drew out from between the armies of Aegyptus and Tsur, and went in haste unto their own land. So when the morning was come, the armies of Aegyptus and Tsur came together, and the matter was made plain.

And the young king of Tsur was chief general of both armies; and he put the armies together and made speed and came after the men of Atlia, and followed them into their own land; and they went forth and came unto the land of Atlia, and entered the borders thereof.

So the king of that land called all the people to resist the invading army; and he gathered them together in the hills around the chief place of the men of Atlia, and stood to meet the men of Aegyptus and Tsur.

Now the men of Atlia were very numerous, and the hills and valleys were full of the people. And the armies came apace, and encamped against them; but they could not meet the men of Aegyptus, for they were very valiant and skilled in war. So the men of Atlia encompassed the army and cast arrows and stones therein; but the armies of Aegyptus and Tsur smote them with great slaughter, so that neither prevailed against the other. And the battle

waxed hot for three days ; and at the end of three days the men of Atlia gathered within the walls of their chief city. And the armies of Aegyptus and Tsur encompassed the city about, and brake down the walls thereof ; and smote the people therein with the sword, and burned the chief city with fire ; and the great temple of the land of Atlia was leveled with the ground.

So they went forth and burned a score of other cities, save three, and put the people of the land to the sword, save six score hundred, who the general of the armies carried off into captivity.

And the king of the land was killed ; and all the people who were not slain or carried into captivity were scattered among the hills. Then did the armies return from following after the men of Atlia and encamped over against the land of Gehalehmot for to rest them before they returned to their own land.

Then came out Manos, the governor of the land of Gehalehmot, and gave unto the men of Aegyptus and of Tsur much provender and merchandise needful. And he gave thanks unto the men of Aegyptus and of Tsur, and would have given them gold and silver, but they forbid him. Then came out eight score virgins with instruments and songs, and sang before the king of Tsur and the chief captains of Aegyptus, and cast garlands of flowers before them ; and they sang songs of triumph before all the armies. So at the end of the season of rejoicing, the armies of Tsur departed unto their own land, and came in peace. Likewise did the armies of Aegyptus.

So all the land of Gehalehmot had peace and rest. And the people of Atlia were no more a people there-

after. And the king of Aegyptus sent an ambassador who abode in the land of Gehalehmot, lest peradventure the people might be in danger of being spoiled again.

CHAPTER XXXI.

So Manos was governor in the land of Gehalehmot ; and the land had rest from wars and from invasions.

And Manos went forth and instructed the people in what was needful and proper for them to understand.

And Keeops, the king of Aegyptus, sent down an ambassador for to remain in the land. And Rabshamah was the ambassador of the king of Aegyptus, and he abode in the chief city of the land of Gehalehmot. And Rabshamah was puffed up with pride and high spirits. and he bore himself as a lord over the people. And Manos was displeased thereat, and bid him be more pleasant in his disposition. So Rabshamah spake angrily unto Manos. And Manos sent unto the great king of Aegyptus and told him of the surly bearing of the ambassador. And the great king was going down unto war and heeded not the matter until such times as he should return.

Now in the land of Mezzinaroth :

And westward from the place of the lake, even where Jeboran was captured by the wild men, was the place of Tervan. And Tervan was old and stricken of years. And there were now of the people of Tervan one hundred and seventy men, women and children ; and they had improved the land, and had beasts and everything convenient and profitable.

And the men of Tervan went forth and subdued the land and improved it, so that it was a pleasant land.

And Tervan called the people together and laid charge upon them that when he should be dead, then should they seek the men of Kaiah and be reconciled unto them ; for, said he, it is meet for my punishment that I remain in the land away from my kindred and from the presence of the good king, even Algoonah. And when he had made an end of speaking he wept before the people ; and he finished speaking by saying :

I shall not remain longer among you. I go the way of all men shortly ; and when I am dead let my bones be taken and laid in a safe place ; and when all of those be dead who were of the age of fifteen years when we came out of the land of Algoonah, then let the residue get up and go down unto the land of Algoonah and the city of the great king.

Then did Tervan make an end of speaking, and went his way unto his place, as did every one of the people.

And the further history of the men of Tervan will be written hereafter.

Now Manos was governor in the ancient land of Gehalehmot, and the people loved and respected Manos, even as if he had been born in the land ; and he did many things needful for the health and convenience of the people, and the fame of the land went abroad throughout all the earth, and no man durst so much as lift his heel against the people of Gehalehmot ; for the great king, Keeops, of Aegyptus, was a friend unto the people, and the governor of the land ; so also was Semarimus, the queen of Assyria.

Now in all the earth were there not two such kings, and two such people, as that of Aegyptus and Assyria. And the earth feared and trembled, by reason of the power and might of these two nations.

And Keeops, the great king, sent unto Semarimus, saying :

Lo, there is not in all the earth two such kingdoms as the kingdoms of Assyria and of Aegyptus. Come, let us make a treaty of peace between us, so that our people go not to war one with another ; for if we should go to battle, then would our strength be overthrown, and the fear and power of nations would depart from us. So the queen heard what the king sent unto her, and she saw the truth thereof, and she said :

What my lord, the king of Aegyptus, saith is even true ; and there is much wisdom in the speech of his lips. Nevertheless, it is meet also that there be no cause for war between the nations. How hath the great king acted in regard to the vanquished king of Tsur? Let him make explanation unto me, and I will go into the treaty with much gladness.

So the messenger of the great king returned and laid the matter before him, and he sent explanation of all the matter unto the queen ; and when she had heard thereof she was pleased, and made treaty with the great king. And there was peace between the great nations for a space of time.

So Manos, the governor, had no cause to fear the nations of the earth, by reason of the peace between the lands of Assyria and Aegyptus ; and the people gained in wealth and substance, and there was prosperity throughout all the land.

And the land of Gheba was a long way from the land of Gehalehmot. Now there came up from the land of Gheba a lad who was a hunchback, and he seemed to be of the age of fourteen years ; and no man knew whence or how he came thither. And he

was of an exceeding pleasant countenance, and the people loved him; and they knew not where he abode nor where he lodged. And he came in unto Manos, and Manos took him for to abide in the governor's house, and he abode there.

And on a certain day came there a strange lad into the presence of the governor. And the presence of the youth was strange and mysterious. And the light of his eyes was terrible. And he came into the presence of the governor, even Manos. And the governor said, Whence comest thou?

And he said, From the land of Gheba, and I seek the hunchback lad, Artel; and I came down with him, and we have been separated, and I desire to see him.

And the governor asked his name, and he said it is Maithan. And he said further, I am desirous to speak separately unto the governor. And those who stood by went out; and he said, My secret thou must keep. I am a sorcerer, born of the men of the great temple of fire, and I wish to see the mystery of the white stone of Exus. And so speaking he cast a flame of fire from his hands; and he bowed before the governor. And the governor replied unto him, saying: Thou must not see the white stone, my son.

And Maithan bowed unto the governor, and said, Let the governor do as seemeth best unto him.

And he asked again for the hunchback, Artel; but they found him not in all the governor's palace.

So the sorcerer youth departed weeping, and would not be prevailed upon for to remain, as he must needs be going. So he departed, and his feet were scarcely out of the gate until Artel returned from the hither gate; and he had been as it were seeking the conies

in the rocks, for he delighted therein. And when they told him of the sorcerer lad, he wept, and said, Fetch him back.

And men went forth and sought the sorcerer lad, but found him not. And the governor was troubled, and said naught of what had happened. And his mind was suspicious toward Artel, for he feared that he and the sorcerer desired to steal the white stone.

Nevertheless, the governor wore it always on his breast. And he watched the lad, and saw no evil in him; and no one knew, save the governor, who the strange lad was. So the mind of the governor was troubled, and he wist not what became of the strange lad.

So Artel lived in the house of the governor, and gained in wisdom every day, yet was his strength only as the strength of a child. And Manos sent unto the queen of Assyria, that he might send merchants down into her land for to traffic with the people of Assyria. Now was the queen going forth to war, and she consented gladly; and she bought of the produce of the earth, and such things as were needful; and the men of Gehalehmot went and came with the merchandise of the land continually.

Now on a certain day, as Manos the governor sat in his house, the lad Artel went forth to seek the beasts whose habitations were in the rocks, as was his wont. And Manos slept on his couch; and he awake, and the sorcerer lad was standing by him; and Manos said, What desirest thou, my son? And Maithan said, I seek the lad Artel.

And Manos said, He goeth out among the rocks, and sit thou down until he returnest. And the lad said, I

may not remain in the governor's house, only so long, and I desire to speak to thee; and Maithan whispered in the ear of Manos. And the governor was filled with amazement, and could not speak by reason of his astonishment. And the lad took his departure weeping, for desiring to see the hunchback lad. And he was scarcely gone when Artel returned by the hither gate from seeking the beasts in the rocks. And Manos called him privately and questioned him, saying, Whence is the strange lad, even Maithan. And Artel wept and said, I durst not tell, only must I see him when he cometh again. And he went forth no more for a season; but, abode in the house; but the lad came not.

And the queen of Assyria went forth unto battle; and her army was like unto the stars of heaven for multitude, and of chariots and horsemen, such as no man could number; and the queen rode in a chariot of gold and of silver, and went forth before her army for to conquer the nations of the earth, and the earth was shaken as it were by the tread of the great army of the queen of Assyria.

And the queen went upon a high hill and viewed her army as the sun was setting; and the sight thereof was such as hath not been seen upon the earth, even until this day; and she went forth and fell upon the men of the nations, and they fled before her, and she overrun the nations to the southward and eastward, and laid the land waste; and the fear of the queen went forth, so that the people quaked and trembled by reason thereof; and when winter came on, she returned unto her own land for to make preparations for to destroy all who should oppose her; and she sent unto Manos, saying, lo, I desire an hundred thousand camel

loads of stuff for my armaments ; and also, an hundred thousand camel loads of cloths from your flocks and herds ; send me the merchandise speedily, and I will repay thee.

And Manos heard the request of the queen and he was sore troubled, and he would not tell her falsely, but called the chief men of the land together, and laid all the matter before them ; and they considered well. Now the reason whereof Manos was troubled, was that he knew that the queen of Assyria desired to overrun the weak and defenceless nations of the earth ; and that she depended on the people of Gehalehmot for merchandise ; so he sent unto her and said that he could not send her the stuff. And the queen sent again, saying, I desire not to hurt thy land, only let me have thy merchandise and it will be well for thee ; and I will repay thee even two fold, otherwise I will come up speedily, and thy land shall be laid waste, even from one end unto the other. And Manos received the messenger of the queen, and heard the message and the import thereof ; and he was greatly troubled, and said, I cannot let the queen have the merchandise to strengthen her hands, for she goeth forth to battle against the weak and defenceless of the earth, and I will not do this great wrong. And he sent unto the queen, and told her with truth and plainness of the great wrong of falling upon the defenceless of the earth, and that he would not help her to go forth by sending the merchandise ; and the queen was very wroth, and desired to march down and overrun the land.

Nevertheless, she was loath so to do, for she knew of the friendship of the king of Aegyptus unto the men of Gehalehmot. And she sent unto the king of Aegypt-

tus, and told him of the matter; and he sent her a message, saying, Hurt not the land of the shepherd people; but rather come and buy of my people. And he sent his merchants down thither, and trafficked with the queen; and her anger was turned aside, for she saw that the king would surely go into battle with her, and she feared not; but by reason of the treaty of peace which she had made, she turned not into the land. And as the time wore on apace was the queen betrothed unto Minak of the princes of Aegyptus, and she was delivered of a child; and she went forth no more unto battle, but spent her time in beautifying the great city of the land of Assyria; and she made it the magnificence of nations. And the name of her child was Esarhaddon; and he grew apace, and waxed strong, and when he was of a proper age, the queen was minded to send him down into the land of Aegyptus, for to learn the wisdom of the people of Aegyptus.

So the land of Gehalehmot was free from the anger of the queen, and had rest for a season. And Manos sought out means to improve the land and make it a prosperous land. And his people understood the stars of heaven; but not as did the men of Aegyptus and Assyria.

And the lad Artel, who was hunch-backed, was in the presence of Manos continually; and he was of a sweet spirit, and the closeness of the house was against him. And Manos said, Go forth, my son, and view the men at labor, for thou pinest in the house. And he went forth; and his feet were scarcely from the door until the lad Maithan came in haste, saying, Where is the hunchback lad? And Manos said, He just now went forth to view the laborers in the field, for the

closeness of the house disagreeeth with him. And the lad Maithan wept by reason of the absence of the hunchback lad. And he departed sorrowing.

So the lad Artel returned from walking in the field, and Manos told him not, for fear of troubling him, of the appearance of the sorcerer lad. And Manos was troubled by reason of the mystery which was around the lad Maithan. And the hunchback lad was shortly grown thin, and his strength departed from him, and he lay on his bed, and Manos was troubled by reason of the sickness of the lad, for the strength of life left him day by day, and his end was approaching. And he called Manos and lay his arms about him, and said, I go the way of all men by reason of the deformity of my spirit. Give me, I pray thee, one request. And Manos wept on his bosom, for he loved the lad, and said, Yea, my son, ask what thou desirest. And the lad saith again, Wilt thou grant my last request? And Manos said, Yea, my son. And Artel made him put his hand under his head and swear. And Manos did so. And Artel said, Let my body be placed on the hill, toward the land of Gheba, and let no man come near it for the space of three days; and it will be a pleasure for me then to depart. Only let me look toward the land of Gheba. And when he had so spoken, he kissed Manos and died.

Then was great lamentation all over the place of the governor, for they all did love the hunchback boy. And Manos did as the lad commanded, and laid him on the great hill looking toward the land of Gheba, over against the highway of the land of Aegyptus. And Manos put on mourning and wept exceedingly. And while he wept in his chamber, he heard some man, as it

were, at his back ; and turning himself, he saw the lad Maithan. And Manos chided him and upbraided him, that he came not to see the lad Artel when he yet lived. And Maithan wept, and asked when he was buried. And Manos told him the whole matter. And the sorcerer lad went forth, and no man knew whither he went.

So at the end of three days Manos went forth to bury the body of Artel. And when they were come thither there was builded a sepulchre of stones, and by it was the lad Maithan ; and he wept thereon. And he said unto Manos, I will go and be a son to thee, even as was the lad Artel, who came up thither with me from the land of Gheba.

So Manos caused a monument to be raised for Artel, and inscribed it with the virtues of the lad, and took Maithan and departed unto his own place ; and so likewise did they all. And the sorcerer lad abode with Manos. And he left off his sorcery, and abode in peace. Nevertheless, there was a mystery about the two lads that troubled Manos very sore ; for the words Maithan whispered in his ear were the same which the old governor, even Exus, told him.

Now Algoonah rested in his palace in the great city of Algoonah, and the length of years was upon him ; yet was not his head bowed, neither grew his eyes dim ; and he saw the people increase and multiply in the land of Mezzinaroth. And tidings came unto the king continually of all the people in all the provinces. And the king was satisfied and at rest, for his people grew in prosperity and filled the land.

Now every year did Jeboran, the king's son, go forth unto the several provinces and viewed them, and

strengthened the people, and took counsel of the governors thereof, for the proper good and well being of the people.

And on a certain day, as Jeboran came unto the presence of his father, the king; the king spake, saying, Much have I desired to know what became of Tervan and his people, and my mind has been troubled by reason of them, for I fear that they have perished by reason of lack of provender. Send, I pray thee, a trusty man for to search for them.

And Jeboran sent for Cetus, who was of those who went to the northward on the great river for to explore it. And Cetus came into the king's presence, and said, Thy servant has seen strange things on the river, twenty days' journey to the northward; for there I found where they had builded houses, and the houses were decaying by reason of age; and I have not troubled the king with the matter, for I supposed it was the work of Tervan and his men.

And when the king had heard it he gave command that Cetus should go forth with sufficient men to explore the land and see where Tervan was. So Cetus went forth.

Then Jeboran went unto the province of Osurus and talked with the people, and with Morah, the governor thereof. And the people had spread over the land; and Jeboran went forth and viewed all the labor of the people, and talked with them and cheered them, and told them of the prosperity of all the people to the eastward, and of the good health of the king, even Al-goonah.

And he took ship and came down unto the land of Albanas; and the people and governor came forth with

joy for to welcome him ; and he went forth and saw that the province of Albanas prospered even more than all the other provinces. And he told the people of all that he saw in the other provinces, and of his desire that the people should be contented and prosperous.

CHAPTER XXXII.

So Jeboran went from one part of the land to the other, and viewed it. And there was peace throughout all the borders of the land.

And Algoonah called him, when he returned unto the city of Algoonah, and spake, saying, These hundred and twenty years have I journeyed through the earth, and I dwelt at first in the house of the great king of Assyria, and I saw his down sittings and his uprisings, and did eat of all that was on the table of the great king, and was the lord chamberlain of his household; and when there was war between the nations, and the king of Aegyptus was discomfited and returned in haste unto his own land, and the kings of Assyria and of Persia followed him hotly for to smite him, and we lay over against the land of Aegyptus and was minded to enter therein, but did not, and I heard the King of Assyria sware to cause the land of Gehalehmot to perish from the earth; and I came speedily by night and gat me out of that land unto the land of Gehalehmot. And as the morning drew on we saw a maid spinning; and she bade us to enter and we did so; and Jucar, my enemy, followed me, and was entangled in the web which the maiden spun; and I smote him heavily, so that he died. And the maiden is even Atomia, your mother. And many wars and laborings have I been in, as the history of our people telleth. And my strength is departing, and thou must alone

from this time henceforth judge and rule this people. So Algoonah made an end of speaking unto Jeboran.

And he went forth from the presence of the king, and judged the people as the king thereof.

And Algoonah rested him in his palace, and went forth only as occasion demanded.

Now Atomia, the wife of Algoonah, was an hundred and eighteen years old, and her strength failed her, and she lay down and arose not, for her strength departed ; and she called Algoonah and Jeboran and died in their presence. And the men of the temple of Kinar came in and took the body of Atomia, and buried it in the temple of Kinar, over against the great river of Algoonah.

Now Atomia was of a good mind, and was the strength and comfort of Algoonah. And Algoonah sat in mourning, and wept much, and said, Alas, am I truly alone. Biariah hath died, and Jeshurim hath died, and Atomia of my bosom hath died ; she who has been my comfort and strength these hundred years. Truly I am solitary and sit in darkness. But shall I soon follow, for my strength is spent, as water that is poured out, and my eyes are darkened by reason of great age ; my head boweth as the trees in winter, and there is no place for me on earth, for I have outlived my fellows.

And the decree went forth, and there was mourning throughout all the land for the good Atomia, for many knew of her good deeds of charity.

So Algoonah was the last of all that came down from the land of Gehalehmot ; and he was not comforted for he was a stranger in the land. Nevertheless, the people all loved Algoonah, and looked upon him with awe

and reverence, for he came, as it were, down from a former age. And Jeboran went and came continually, so his burden was very heavy.

And Erech, the governor of the land of Jeshurim, saith unto him, Now, may thy burden be lighter; set men in each province who shall stand in the stead of the king, and let them judge the people in thy stead.

And it pleased Jeboſan; and in every province was a man appointed, who stood for the king, for the governors had their proper office, which pertained not to the office of the king; and so it was done. And Jeboran had rest, and abode with Algoonah in the great city, and came only at long spaces of time in such provinces.

So there was an ambassador of the great king of Aegyptus in the chief city of Gehalehmot; and he was of a cross and surly carriage, as we have seen; and when Keeops, the great king, returned, he recalled the ambassador and cast him into a dungeon.

And Semarimus, the great queen, died, and Esarhaddon, her son, reigned in her stead. And he was cruel and treacherous, and he heard of the land of Gehalehmot, and the amount of stuff and merchandise which they had, and his soul lusted after the spoil of the land. And there was one who loved the people of Gehalehmot, for on a certain time the queen was wroth with him, and he fled in haste unto the land of Gehalehmot for refuge, and durst not return until the queen died. And he had great skill in the preparation of food, and the young king had him to wait on the king's table and his name was Nashack. And Nashack heard of the matter that the young king contemplated, and he came away by stealth, and went into the

land of Aegyptus and told of the matter. And the king Keeops, of Aegyptus sent down, saying :

If so be the young king falleth on the land of Gehalehmot, then will I come down and smite him from the earth.

And the young king was haughty and proud, and dared the great king to his face ; and sent forth and prepared a vast armament for to march down unto the land of Aegyptus, and punish the great king for his message. And Thermes was chief general of all the armies of Assyria ; and he was old and well learned in war, and very valiant. And he stood before the young king and reasoned with him, and Esar haddon saith, I may not contend with thee. And he bade the officer of the household for to cast Thermes into a dungeon until the morrow, then cut off his head.

And Thermes was beloved by the army of Assyria ; and he went forth and no man durst touch him, even so much as his garment. And Thermes went forth, and called the chief men of the army and told them, thus and thus saith the king. And the army and the chief men said, We will not go down to war with the men of Aegyptus, for they be as mighty as the land of Assyria, and both people must perish from the earth.

So the chief men went in unto the king as he sat on his bed, and wrapped the vesture of the bed and the cushions thereof around the head of Esar haddon, and tied them securely, and speedily went away ; and the king died, and no one knew wherof he died. Now Esar haddon was only seventeen years old when he died, and he reigned only two years in the land of Assyria, and there was no one to be king after him.

So the army of Assyria called Thermes, and they brought forth the great crown and the robe of the king of Assyria and placed them on him, and he was made king by the name of Therhaddon; and he was seventy and four years old when he began to reign; and he was of a new dynasty. And the descendants of the dynasty of Therhaddon were of the mightiest kings and princes which were ever in all the land of Assyria. And Therhaddon was wise and good; and he sent a message of peace unto the great king of Aegyptus; and the great king turned aside his anger from the people of Assyria, and renewed the treaty of peace which he had made with Semarimus; and there was peace throughout all nations; and the merchants of the earth went and came and trafficked with one another and made great gain.

And Therhaddon was of an enlightened mind, and nothing delighted him so much as to come with the men of science. And he made a great temple and collected therein all the books which were written; and he builded schools, and learned of all the wisdom of the nations. And he sent up into the land of Gehalehmot and desired the governor to send his young men down, that they might learn in his schools, and Manos did so. Now the youth Maithon dwelt in the house of Manos, and he was much beloved by Manos, for he was of a good disposition, and he went and came as his mind was pleased to do, and no one stayed him or asked, whither goest thou. So there was peace again in all the land; and Therhadon reigned for the space of ten years, and his strength departed and he died, and his son Belnezer reigned in his stead.

And Keeops, king of Aegyptus, was sore distressed,

for he respected Therhaddon greatly, and he sent words of comfort to Belnezer, the young king. And Belnezer was like unto his father in wisdom and valor; and he read of the history of the kings of Assyria, and saw that much war had been made against people who had been weak and defenceless. And the young king swore there should be no war, save such as was necessary, while he sat upon the throne. And he went forth and builded the great and famous city of the land, and set great walls about it, and caused the people to make the land fruitful. And made canals and water courses through the land. And he was of an enlightened disposition, and he said within himself, I will go up and view the manners of the shepherd people. If haply I may see their prosperity, which will be of advantage to me. And he disguised himself and took trusty servants and went into this land, first giving word that he went forth to view his land.

So he went as a merchant and came into the land of Gehalehmot and viewed it. So he came into the land and place of the governor, and he went in for to see the governor. And the governor asked, Whence comest thou? And Belnezer said, From the land of Assyria, and I seek the merchandise of thy land. And the young man Maithan stood with the governor, and he saith, Friend, I would speak with thee. And Belnezer saith, Speak on. And Maithan whispered in his ear:

Thou art an anointed king, for I see the manner of a king in thy face. And Belnezer said, Thou hast spoken truly. And he made himself known unto Manos, and Manos did obeisance to him, and took him into his own house. And the king desired that the news should not go forth, as he wished to see the people

of the land as they followed their customary business. And he went forth and saw all the manners of the people, and was pleased thereat. So he was determined to follow much of the business which the people of Gehalehmot followed. And the art of pottery, which the people learned of Aoba, he desired to learn; and he besought Manos to send cunning workmen down into the land of Assyria for to learn his people, and Manos did so. And when the king came to return unto his own land, he desired of Manos that he should permit Maithan to accompany him, for he loved the youth; and Manos consented thereto; and Maithan went down unto the land of Assyria and abode there for a season.

Now while Belnezer was absent, there were certain men who were of the family of Esarhaddon, and they made a plot to slay the king, even Belnezer, and take the kingdom from him; and they were crafty and moved with circumspection; and they were of the number who were in the king's household.

And Belnezer sat upon the throne, and judged the people as was his wont; and the young man Maithan was suspicious of the plot, for he often saw the men conversing together, and he went out and disguised himself as an old man, and a merchant from the land of Gheba; and he had curious merchandise, even jewelry and rings and signets of gold, and he came in and abode in the great city, and wore a white beard, and trafficked with the people; and he came into the king's palace, and sold unto the king's servants; and the king heard thereof, and had him brought in, and the king knew him not; so when he had occasion he whispered in the ear of the king, and Belnezer was filled with

astonishment; so he went his way, and came unto the place of his lodging.

Now on a certain day, as the morning came, the servants of the king's household waited for the king to arise and wash himself, and he came not; and they entered the king's bed chamber, and he was not there. So there was search made, and great uproar throughout the city; but the king could not be found; and Naroeh the brother of the king, took the throne until such time as he should be found; and Naroeh caused diligent search to be made, yet without avail. So no man knew what had become of the king, and Naroeh was king in his stead, after a lapse of two years.

Now the men of Esarhaddon were many, and they were very crafty.

In the land of Gheba was there a king, who was mighty and valorous, and he subdued the surrounding nations, and his name was Kurus, and he called his land, the land of Persia; and it was no more called the land of Gheba.

Now Kurus had been the chief man of the army of Gheba; and the king before him had been cruel; and Kurus drove out the king with many of his followers; and the old king departed thence, and builded the city of Palmyra in the desert, as thou goest down on the highway of the merchants; and the city of Palmyra became great and famous, so that there was a great and valorous people there; and Kurus the king of Persia, went forth and smote the nations around him, so that they were glad to get peace by paying tribute unto him; and he came down for to invade the land of Assyria; and Naroeh the king, came forth and met Kurus over against the city of Palmyra; and they

fought heavily, and neither prevailed; so each army returned unto his own land, and made ready greater battle on the next year; and Naroch gathered together a vast army, and went forth to meet the new power, which threatened to overrun the whole earth; and the king Kecops of Aegyptus heard thereof, and sent his son Karnac, with emissaries unto the king of Assyria, saying, It is meet that I should assist in this matter, for if the king of the east, even Kurus, shall vanquish thee, then will he overrun my land.

And Naroch consented thereto, and Keeops gathered together an army, like unto the stars of heaven for multitude, and sent them down for to meet the army of Assyria, and to join them in battle with the king of Persia.

So Karnac, the king's son, went forth for to command the hosts of Aegyptus, and they joined the army of Assyria; and their forces were very great; and Kurus came down with an exceeding great army, and encamped against the hosts of Aegyptus and of Assyria.

And the armies fell together, and the battle was very hot in the desert over against the city of Palmyra, and the men of Assyria and Aegyptus prevailed against the men of Persia, and drave them back. Nevertheless, they were too much spent to follow the hosts of Persia, and each army returned unto his own land, and made ready to meet the men of Persia, if they should follow them again.

And Naroch wist not what had become of the lad Maithan, for he saw him not since he left the land, when the king had disappeared. So he sat one day in his hall of judgment, and a merchant of strange ap-

pearance, came in, and Naroeh said, whence comest thou ; and the merchant said, from the land and city of Palmyra ; and he said further, I have a matter to speak with the king ; so the king commanded all to go out, save the merchant ; and he spake in the ear of the king, so that he was sore amazed, and came near falling as one dead, and he quickly departed. And the king made haste and gathered the army together, and came quickly toward the city of Palmyra.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

So Naroch, the king of Assyria, gat him up with his army, and marched unto the city of Palmyra. And there was with him a prince of Persia, a young man whom no one knew save the king, even Naroch. And they went and encamped over against the city of Palmyra and waited for the king Karnac, of Aegyptus.

And the army of Assyria rested, for the king had sent word in haste for the army of Aegyptus to hasten down and join them. And the king of Aegyptus came apace and joined his forces with Naroch; and they were set in battle array before the city of the desert, even Palmyra.

And the armies of Persia drew on apace, and came near and encamped behind the armies of Assyria and Aegyptus. And they drew off for the space of a hundred furlongs and set them in array.

And the armies of Assyria and Aegyptus gat them up for to meet the army of Persia, and they speedily fell to battle in the desert. And it was the third battle which was before the city of Palmyra.

So the battle raged hot until the going down of the sun, and neither prevailed.

Now the young prince of Persia was named Cyrus, he that was with Naroch, and he was the rightful king of Persia, for he was the nephew of him whom Kuros drave out of the land. Now Cyrus was a young man

twenty and six years old, and he had dwelt at times in the city of Palmyra ; and he came unto Naroch in disguise and told him his story ; also much that was of more interest to Naroch, which we will see the import of very soon.

So at the going down of the sun the armies fell apart and rested.

And Kuros, the king of Persia, was in the midst of the army ; and he rested in the royal tent of the land of Persia. And Cyrus, the young Prince, entered the army of Persia, and spake unto the guards, and they admitted him, supposing him to be of the army. And Cyrus made way unto the tent of Kondorus, the great general of the army, and spake in his ear. And Kondorus marveled greatly. And they were in close converse all the night, until the dawning of day. And Kondorus cast an armor on Cyrus, and disguised him, and then went forth and communicated with all the generals and chief captains of the army.

So at the rising of the sun a third part of the army of Persia were drawn off and led back to the rearward. And the battle again raged mightily ; and the place where Kuros the king stood, was made weak, and Naroch pressed him with vehemence, and Kuros was slain in his chariot. And instantly the trumpet blew, and the armies of Persia fell back to the rearward. And Naroch blew his trumpet and caused his army to stand.

So Cyrus lifted the banner of the king of Persia, and Kondorus blew the trumpet and said, Long live the young king Cyrus of Persia. And the chief captains gathered around him and bowed unto him. And the army of Aegyptus stood wondering. But a decree

was sent forth and the matter was made plain unto all the armies.

And Cyrus came forth and first made peace with the kings of Assyria and Aegyptus, and then took Naroch privately and led him forth, saying: We will shortly demand what thou seekest of the king of the city of Palmyra.

So Naroch blessed the young king of Aegyptus, and Karnac went his way unto his own land, even the land of Aegyptus.

Now the city of Palmyra was in the desert, and was afterwards a famous city; and the people thereof waxed rich, by reason of the merchandise of the nations which fell in their way. And the king thereof ruled with great rigor, for he was a severe, yet a just man. And on a certain day was a man brought in by some merchants, and the man was accused of robbing and slaying another merchant; and the king of Palmyra commanded that he be cast into prison, as a pestilent fellow, until such time as proof be brought against him; then should he suffer death for taking the life of his fellow. And the man was cast into a dungeon under the great palace of the king, and he had lain there until the time of the last battle, which was ten years.

And Naroch stood before the gates of the city of Palmyra with his army, and encompassed the city; and the army of Persia rested afar off by the river, yet was the young king with the army of Naroch. And the king of Palmyra was sore troubled, and sent forth, saying, What seek ye, with armies and banners against the city of Palmyra? Have not we dealt justly with all men, and whom have we done any wrong unto?

And Naroch said, Ten of my chief captains and the young king of Persia and myself, desire to make an entrance unto thee, and cause the prisoner whom ye have in the dungeon these ten years to be brought unto judgment.

And the king of Palmyra communed within himself, and said, This is very reasonable, the thing which they demand of me ; and if I refuse, peradventure they will break the wall of my city and lay it waste.

So the king sent unto Naroch, saying, Come up and enter my house, and to-morrow shall the man be brought to judgment.

So Naroch and Cyrus, and the chief captains, went in, for the king of Palmyra opened the gate of the city for them ; and they came unto the king's house ; and on the morrow they went into the great hall of judgment. And the king of Palmyra sent his chief officer and brought up the prisoner ; and he was much broken in spirit, and his hair was white as snow, and his beard fell upon his breast, even like unto his hair for whiteness. And he was brought and stood in the presence of the kings ; and when Naroch and the chief captains of Assyria saw him they fell unto the ground, saying, It is the king, even Belnezer. And it was he. And he said, Arise, my brethren.

And Naroch went over and fell upon his neck, and wept upon him. And Naroch took off the royal robe and threw it on Belnezer. And Cyrus, the king of Persia, saluted him. And when the king of Palmyra saw what the king of Assyria did, his knees smote together for fear, and his voice failed him. But Belnezer smiled on him, and said, Fear not, O king, only do not let

thy severity again set a man in prison until thou hast judged him.

And Naroeh went forth with joy, and prepared the army of Assyria for a joyful occasion, and told them not. And on the morrow he led forth Belnezer in a chariot; and all the people wept, and shouted for joy at the sight of the king, even Belnezer.

And Belnezer viewed all the army; and the king of Palmyra came and said unto Belnezer, Lo, all my city is thine; rest and regain thy strength.

And Naroeh took the army of Assyria, save three legions, and went his way unto his own land. And Belnezer stayed in the city, and the strength of life speedily returned unto him. And he stayed in the city until the latter rains of the year; then he gat him up and came down unto his own land. And the people of Assyria made great rejoicing over him, and there was great festivity when he returned.

Now, Cyrus, the young king of Persia, was the first king by that name, for there were four kings of Persia named Cyrus; and when Naroeh departed with the army of Assyria, Cyrus sent the chief general with the greater part of the army of Persia unto their own land, saying: I must needs turn aside into the land of Gehalehmot; Go thou down unto Persia and await my coming. And he set Kondorus, the chief captain, over the people to judge them until such time as he should return.

Now, Manos was old, and the people dwelt in peace around him; nevertheless, he heard the strange things that were happening in the other lands; and he was much troubled when the part of the army of Persia encamped over against his land, and more so, when a messenger came saying, The king of Persia desireth to

speak to thee in thine own palace ; and the messenger said further, The king sweareth to do thee and thy people no harm. And Manos said, I fear not, let the young king come in and speak unto me.

And Cyrus crossed over the borders of the land and came unto the presence of the governor, even Manos ; and Manos arose, but the young king bowed unto Manos, saying : It is a pleasure unto the king of Persia to see the noble and good Manos, of whom I have heard so much ; and I have turned aside to listen unto the wisdom of his lips, and to make treaty of peace with him. So Manos sat him at his side, and they spake pleasantly in the speech of Persia ; and Cyrus said, Thou speakest well ; I am filled with astonishment thereat.

Then Manos said, Behold, I am of the land of Gheba, even Persia, and of the royal household. My brother was the king. And Cyrus was seemingly filled with wonder, and embraced him, and said, Thou art my father's brother. So Manos kissed him, and was much moved, and could not keep from looking at him, for he knew his face and speech, and supposed it was on account of the father of Cyrus, who was his younger brother.

Then said Cyrus, Send out yonder servants, I would speak with thee alone. And Manos waved his hand, and the servants went out. Then Cyrus arose and went behind a curtain of the wall, and stepped forth disguised. And Manos, filled with amazement, came down to meet him, saying, It is Maithan ! And Manos was so filled with astonishment he could not speak. But Cyrus smiled and said, When I was a lad did the king cause me to be learned in all the magic of Gheba, and

all the secrets of the great temple of fire ; and I know well of the mystery of the white stone of Exus, which lay at first by the altar of the sacred fire, yet it is thine and thy people's. Keep it ; and may prosperity follow it. Now, I came into thy land to escape the vengeance of Kuros and his father, who drove out the old king of Persia, who was my uncle. And I was taken unto the city of Palmyra, where my mother caused me to be learned in all the science of Gheba ; and when I was fifteen years old did she send me with Artel into thy land for safety ; and I practiced the arts of sorcery, and thou knowest how I went down unto the land of Assyria and followed the captivity of the king, Belnezer, and caused his brother Naroeh to release him. Then came down the second Kuros, false king of Persia, and I followed him. And the old chief captain, who hated the king, caused the army to withdraw from him, so that he was slain, and I was proclaimed king in his stead. And as Manos listened he was filled with wonder and could scarcely believe him.

Then said the young king : I go behind the curtain again ; and after staying a short season he came forth ; and when Manos beheld him he fell as one dead, saying only : Artel, the hunchback. And Cyrus straightened himself ; and lifted up Manos and revived him and comforted him. So Manos was come to himself, and Cyrus explained to him the reason he first appeared as two persons ; and the explanation thereof was that he desired to come in and view the white stone of Exus, for his curiosity was great to see it.

And Manos said, We have long conversed, and my strength is spent by reason of excitement ; let us go in and eat and drink, and on the morrow will I show thee

the white stone. So they went in and eat and drank, and rested until the morrow.

Now when the king Belnezer was rested in his palace, he called all his chief men, with Naroch, and stood up and spake unto them, saying: It is proper, O men of Assyria, that ye should know how my imprisonment came about; and the manner thereof is as follows:

It is well known that the men of Esarhaddon were jealous of me, and hated me with exceeding great hatred, and I knew it not; so they made a plan to slay me, and feared to do so in my palace, lest it should be known. So as I was in my bed I drank wine, and they gave me therein (for they were of my palace) hemlock, so that I slept as one dead; and they carried me out and put a mean robe on me, and took me away unto the city of Palmyra. And the hemlock bereft me of my reason until I was cast into prison. And there was a young man, at the close of the eighth year, who was put over me, and when he had opportunity he told me that he was Maithan, the young sorcerer of the land of Gehalehmot, and that he would cause my release. And the strange and wonderful things that have since happened have turned my mind as it were. Now these ten years have I been in prison, and you, my people, are strange unto me. And lo! my brother, even Naroth, knoweth all things pertaining unto the government of the people. Let him be king in my stead, for I desire to rest, and have no cause of excitement, for I long have been in prison.

So the people agreed thereto, and Naroch was again made king before the people, and went forth and judged the land of Assyria thirty and eight years.

And Belnezer went unto his house outside the great city and tilled the soil, and was content.

After Manos and the young king had slept they arose and did eat and refresh themselves. And at the close of the business of the day Manos took Cyrus in and showed him the white stone of Exus, and he marvelled thereat, and the matter which they spake of was hidden.

So Cyrus gat him up with his people, and came down into the land of Persia. And all the people rejoiced; for they hated Kuros, and his father who was king before him. And Cyrus sent forth and set all who were cast into prison of Kuros, free. And the land of Persia had rest, for Cyrus went not to war without cause.

And the land of Gehalehmot had rest, and there was no cause of war among the people of the earth. And there was peace among all nations for a season.

So when Naroeh was made king, he sent forth and caused all the men of Esarhaddon to be taken, and he slew them, and cast their bodies into the great river; and made their habitations desolate; so the kingdom was tranquil and at peace.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

So Manos grew old and much stricken of years, and there was no strength left in him, and he called together the heads of the people, and they sat Manos on high; and the strength of his voice returned and he spake unto the people, and he began at the earliest part of their history, and set all things in order before them, even from the time Minas left the land of Phœnicia; and how all the people had prospered from the beginning, and he told them of the manner of Exus coming out from the land of Gheba, and how that he himself, also came out of that land, as did Exus; and he spake of the wonderful things which happened in the other nations, even the land of Assyria, Aegyptus and Persia; and he spake of the fire which the children of Gheba did worship; and he said, The fire is no creature worthy of worship, for worship is the highest service man can pay, and lo, it is foolishness to bow down unto that which is only a creature of man's comfort; turn not I pray thee my people in the foolishness of the fireworshippers. And much more did Manos say, which is not necessary now to write; and when he had finished speaking, he desired that the people should choose him who should be governor after him; and the people said, Who is like unto Aran the son of Pul, for wisdom, lo, there is none; so Aran was brought up unto the chief city.

Now Aran was laboring in the fields, and they brought him in and set a blue robe upon him, which he must henceforth wear, as the custom of the land dictated.

So he came unto the chief city of Gehalehmot, and Manos had him in privately, and committed unto him the things pertaining unto the matter of Exus, and he was qualified as governor of the people, and went his way unto his own place, and tilled the soil.

So Manos grew much stricken of years, and his strength speedily departed from him, and he blessed Aran, and all the chief men of the people, and drew his feet in the bed and died. And all the years of Manos were one hundred and six, and he was buried in the land of Gehalehmot by the side of Exus, and the people made great lamentation over him. And the time of the reign of Exus and of Manos was notable throughout all the future ages of the history, and it was called the age of Gheban governors.

And Aran ruled the people instead of Manos; and he was a young man of the lower provinces of the people; and he was much learned in all wisdom, for he abode when a youth in the city of Palmyra, for Pul his father was a merchant, and went hither with merchandise unto Palmyra for to traffic, for they need no more go into other lands, for each could traffic with the other in that city.

So Aran loved the tillage of the soil, and wrought thereat until he was made governor; and he ruled the people with wisdom and judgment; and there was prosperity in all the borders.

So the people came and went, and made great gain by trafficking with the people of the earth.

And the king of Palmyra engaged cunning workmen from all lands, and builded the city of Palmyra so that it was the pride and glory of the earth.

And the wise men and the rich and great men came there for to learn and see the magnificence thereof.

And Karnac, the king of Aegyptus, came up and viewed the city, for he had been there at the time of the war between the kingdoms of Persia and of Assyria; and he returned, and was filled with astonishment at the magnificence of the land.

And the merchants likewise, came from the land of Gehalehmot and trafficked with that land, and got gain thereby.

So Aran, the governor, looked forth and saw that the land was prosperous, and he determined also to build a great city, which should be the glory of the earth; and he called the chief men and the sages, and all the wise men of the land, and laid the matter before them, and they considered the matter for many days; and while they were considering, the governor, Aran, on a certain night dreamed as he lay on his bed; and the dream which he saw was after this fashion: His thoughts came into his mind on his bed, and he saw a great and exceeding high temple, and the fashion thereof was glorious like unto gold and precious stones, and the nations of the earth looked and beheld the grandeur and magnificence thereof; and the people said, Behold the glory of the habitation of Aran, the governor of the land of Gehalehmot, and his heart was filled with pride and puffed up with vanity, and he could do naught but gaze on the superstructure of the temple which his hands had reared; and he walked around the compass of it and looked upon it. But, lo,

as he gazed, there came a mighty and strong wind from the way of the eastward, and the wind smote the four corners of the temple vehemently, so that it fell, and it fell upon the land of Gehalehmot and upon the people, and upon the cities and upon the villages, and it ground them into dust; and the wind lifted up the dust and blew it toward the sea; and Aran stood alone in the plain, over against the great river of the land of Gehalehmot, and he was troubled and awoke from his dream, and his mind was much cast down, and he called unto the chamberlain of the household, and caused him to set a light in the chamber so he might no more dream that night.

So when the morning was come, and he met the chief men and the sages, and the wise men, his countenance was cast down and beclouded; and they asked him, saying, What troubleth thee? And the governor stood up and related unto them the dream which he had, and there was silence, until an ancient man of the people stood up and beckoned unto them; and they listened unto him, and he said, The dream of the governor is to us and our people. Let us take heed thereto, for if we build a great and magnificent city, it will be a temptation unto some other nation, which will come down as did the wind in the governor's dream, and will spoil the land, and cast out the people as the dust of the earth. And when the old man had spoken, they all saw the reason of it; and they every man departed unto his own house, and the city was not builded. And Aran was sorry, for he saw that he had not done wisely in the matter; and he desisted from building any magnificent city, but rather strengthened the walls of those that had been built, and set ditches

around them, and made storehouses in them, and dug wells of water therein, so that the people might be secure. And for twenty and eight years did Aran strengthen and defend the land; and further, he saw that if the merchandise of the land increased then would the people be compelled to learn to war the other nations.

So the people returned to the simple habits of their fathers, and trafficked but little with the nations. And the king of Palmyra wondered thereat, and sent emissaries down unto the land to see why they had so much ceased to merchandise with the city. And the emissaries came in and viewed the land and saw the strength of it; and they came in unto Aran and talked with him, and Aran treated them kindly, but gave them no answer, save that the people consumed the fruit of the earth, and had but little to merchandise with other nations. And so the land had rest and peace.

Now in the land of Mezzinaroth there was the province of Jeshurim, which was by the great river of Algoonah, and Erech was the governor thereof; And the province of Biariah, by the great river of the westward, and Jaban was governor thereof; And the province of Mestus, to the eastward, and Mestus was governor thereof; And the province of Gonath to the southward from the great city of Algoonah, and Gonath was governor thereof; And the province of Osurus, and Morah was governor thereof; And the province of Albanas, and Albanas was governor thereof. And there were also the men of Tervan, but Algoonah knew not of them.

So Tervan was dead, and his son Phalon was the governor of the people in the stead of Tervan. And the people were familiar with the land, and they loved it,

and desired no more, only to live in that land ; for the strength of the people were those who were young, and knew not of the other part of the people ; and they had not the good influence of Algoonah and the heads of the people ; and they were ignorant and cared not for the history of the people ; and when their fathers told them of the history of the good Kaiah and Algoonah, they scoffed them. Nevertheless, they prospered in their land, and went and came, and increased in the land.

So after forty years had passed since Tervan left the province of Mestus, did Phalon, the governor, make a decree that the history of the removal of the men of Kaiah into the land of Mezzinaroth should not be told, for it was false, as they had dwelt in the land from the beginning, and no man knew whence came the people at the first.

Now there was one living who came up from the land of Algoonah, and he was old ; and his name was Astolan ; and he privately instructed the young men of the history of the land and the land of Gehal-ehmot, and of the land of Mozman, and the land of Katharia, and all the important things of the history. And Phalon heard thereof and he was wroth, and brought Astolan before him, and spake harshly unto him, and said, Thou knowest that I forbade thee telling of that foolish story, for it maketh the people discontented, and turneth their heads from their business ; besides, thou knowest not of the things of which ye speak. Who hath seen Algoonah, or who hath crossed the great waters from some other land ? Be wise, O father Astolan, and declare that thou believest not these things, and I will let thee go in peace ; otherwise,

I will set thee in a dungeon, and punish thee for thy disobedience of the governor.

And Astolan stood up and spake unto all the people, saying, Thy servant is an old man, and one whom ye all know from your childhood. If any man hath ever heard me speak a lie, let him now stand forth and accuse me. But they all said, Speak on, Oh Astolan, for thou art truthful. So Astolan spake further: I was thirty and four years old when we left the land of Algoonah, and I was born in the city of Algoonah, by the great river of the eastward, and I have with mine own eyes seen Algoonah and Atomia, his wife, and Jeshurim, the governor of the province, and Biariah, the governor of the other province, and they all came out from the land of Gehalehmot, even across the great sea; and I have heard them speak and tell of all that happened; and this is all true and faithful; and the governor, even Phalon, cannot change the truth of this matter. My time is short, and I live but little longer, and I am the last of the ones who came up with Tervan. After I am dead lay my bones here; then depart unto the land as Terván desired.

And while Astolan spake, the wrath of Phalon arose, and he cried out, Down with him, and cast him into a dungeon; and it was done. And the people considered how that Astolan was very old, and had been always as a father unto them; so they arose and brake in the door of the dungeon and let him out; and they went to cast Phalon therein; and they cast Phalon therein for treating the old man so despitefully.

And the wise ones of the people said, What danger is there in believing the story which we have heard from our fathers and from the governor Tervan. Let us send

men down for to see if the people there believe the same story.

So they cast out Phalon and made Charnoch governor. And they sent men, even ten, to explore the land by way of the great river. And they arose at the time of casting seed into the earth, and went thirty days' journey unto the eastward, and came unto the great river, and builded boats; and at the end of twenty days more, made ready and came down the great river yet another twenty days. And they came unto the farther abode of the people, and came to land.

And the people came around them, and looked on them in wonder, and spake with them, saying, whence come ye? And the ten men spake the same language, and they told them of Tervan. And some of the people took them in and treated them kindly, and told them that the good king, Algoonah, yet lived. And on the morrow they sent them on unto the city of Algoonah.

And when they were come on two days' journey they came unto the city of Algoonah; and it was noised abroad that part of the men of Tervan had returned; and they brought them speedily unto the house of Algoonah, and took them in before him. And when the ten men saw Algoonah they fell on their faces before him, for his presence was not like anything they had ever seen for age and venerableness, as well as intelligence,

And Algoonah was much moved to see them, and asked them if their people did prosper and not perish. And the men told him of their prosperity, and why they came, to wit: For to see him and learn if it was true of all matters related by Astolan. And Algoonah

saith unto them, Ye shall hear of your own ears from my lips the story.

So Algoonah began at the beginning and told them the true history, and the chief things that had happened ; and the men wondered greatly.

And Algoonah sent a writing of parchment, making Charnoch governor of the people, and making the land a province, if they chose to remain there.

CHAPTER XXXV.

So it came to pass that Cyrus, the king of Persia, was dead, and his son Aklan reigned in his stead. Also Naroch, the king of Assyria, was dead, and his brother Belnezer's son, Narhaddon, reigned in his stead. Also Pharonah was the king of Aegyptus, and did reign in the room of his father, Karnac. And these kings knew of the land of Gehalehmot, and remembered the traditions of their fathers.

And Aran the governor did reign thirty and eight years in the land, and died, leaving Patros governor of the land of Gehalehmot. And all these years the land had peace, and there was prosperity in the land. But in the fifth year of the reign of Patros as governor, there came winds from the desert, and the winds desolated all the lands, even as far as the city of Exus, being as much as the third thereof. And the wind came when the corn was earing and smote the corn so that it died; and many of the people also died, on account of the wind; and much cattle likewise. And the people who lived over against the city of Exus, in the land which was desolated, removed thence and came in the upper country toward the mountains.

Then did Patros, the governor, give command that the men of the upper parts of the land divide their substance with the men whom the desert wind had driven out; and they did so.

Now Aklan, the king of Persia, sent down unto the king of Assyria, saying, Come, I pray, and help me to war against the nations to the eastward. But the king of Assyria would not, for Aklan, the young king was hasty and foolish.

And Narhaddon, the king of Assyria, was a wise king, and he sent unto Aklan, saying, What cause hast thou against the people to the eastward, and why goest thou down to battle with them? And Aklan, when he had heard the words of Narhaddon, was much incensed, and swore to do battle against the king of Assyria himself.

So he came down with his army after a season, and pitched his encampment over against the city of Palmyra. And the king of Palmyra brought him in and reasoned with him, saying, Thou canst not overthrow the mighty king of Assyria, even as strong as thou art; turn, I pray thee, unto thine own place, for thou wilt be the destruction and overthrow of both thy people and the people of Assyria. And the chief men of Persia joined their voices unto the king of Palmyra, and they prevailed against him.

So he consented to return, but said, I will turn aside and see the land of Gehalehmot ere I return to my land. For Aklan had great curiosity to hear of the people and to see their manners and customs.

So he took picked men, even an hundred score, and his chief chamberlain, and turned aside into the land of Gehalehmot; and he came apace and drew nigh unto the borders of the land, and he stopped on the borders thereof, and sent messengers unto the rulers of the land, as was the custom in times of peace in those days; and the messengers went a days journey into the

land ; and, lo, it was desolated, by reason of the winds of the desert. And they returned and told the king, saying, This land is desolated, by reason of the sand and wind. We have seen many houses, but no people.

And the mind of Aklan was filled with astonishment, and he said, I must see this wonderful matter ; so he arose and came over, and went even two days' journey into the land ; and he was sorrowful, by fearing that the land was destroyed, so he stopped and sent his messengers on, to see if haply the land was all destroyed ; and the messengers came on unto the city, and the tomb of Exus ; and here they found the people of the land.

And the people of the land asked them whence they came ; and they said, We be men sent by Aklan, son of Cyrus, the king of Persia, and we bring peace with us, if so be that there is peace in the heart of thy people.

So the messengers came on, and entered into the presence of the governor Patros. And when Patros had heard that the king of Persia was near at hand he was astonished. Nevertheless, he sent and bid him come in.

So Aklan came in, and stood before the governor, and he bowed unto the governor, and said, It is well with my lord the governor. And Patros said, Yea O, king. And they talked much and very pleasantly. And the king desired to go forth and view the land.

So Patros sent forth and bid the people dress themselves in new and clean garments, for on such a day would the great king of Persia view the land ; and thus he did every day.

So the king of Persia went forth with the governor,

and the king saw how the people were all clad in fine cloth, and he said within himself, this is a great and rich people; behold how they are clothed for labor in the fields; but he said nothing unto the governor, but communed with himself, saying, it is unto my advantage that I make treaty of peace with this people; for if I must needs go to war they will be able to give me great assistance.

So they went through the length and breadth of the land, and viewed it; and when they returned unto the chief city, it was the time for the grand council of the people to meet. And Patros set the king beside him in the council, and he was astonished at the wisdom of the old men of the council. And the council sat twenty days.

And the king called Patros the governor aside, and desired to make a treaty with him, so that when one should go to war, then should the other assist.

But, Patros answered, saying: Nay, it is against the traditions of our people, for to go to war, even from the days of Minas, the first governor in the land; for we are a simple people, and till the ground and tend our flocks and herds and do harm to no man.

And the king was angry, and much displeased, and got him up and went in haste unto his own land.

In the land of Mezzinaroth.

So the men of the place of Tervan came unto the presence of Algoonah, and Algoonah, after that he had told them the history of the people, blessed them and let them go unto their own place; and he sent Maronath, a good and trusty man, to see the people of Tervan, and to see if they desired ought. And they

also had much presents for the people and for the old man who came out of the land. And Algoonah sent unto the people saying: If ye desire to be a separate people and a separate province, then will I set a governor over you and make you as the other provinces; but if ye desire to come down, do as seemeth best unto you. And the messengers with Maronath, the messenger of the king, came away and went without accident unto the place of the men of Tervan; and the people saw them approach, and gladly came to see them, and they looked with wonder on Maronath, and he told them to meet on the morrow for to consider matters of importance.

So on the morrow the people assembled together, and Maronath stood up and told them of all things that should be of interest to them, even the chief events in the history of the men of Kaiah, since they left the land of Gehalehmot; and he told them of the prosperity of all the land, and of the great numbers of the people, and all of importance that had occurred in the land; and he told them of what Algoonah, the old king, said; how that if they desired to stay in the land he would make them as the other provinces and set a governor over them, or if they chose to come down they should have a place in the land among the people of the provinces.

So when Maronath had ceased speaking, the people all considered the matter, and they said, This is the land of our birth, and here our fathers and mothers are buried, and we prefer to remain here; and further, we desire that the king set Maronath over us as governor, and set the bounds of our province, and let it be

called after our father, Tervan, for he died in this land.

So Maronath sent unto Algoonah this resolution of the people and all they desired ; and when Algoonah heard it he was pleased, and set Maronath over the province as governor ; and Maronath sent and brought workmen and cunning craftsmen and instructed the people ; and there were many of the people come into the province of Tervan. So that when Maronath had been governor ten years there were thirty and five thousand people in the province. When, therefore, that Maronath took the government of the province, he set apart two men for service in the temple of Kinar, as was the custom.

So there was a great highway made unto the great river ; and in the third year of the reign of Maronath, Jeboran, the king's son, came and viewed the land and judged the people ; and there was one who had been governor after Tervan, and he and his fellows fled to the westward when Maronath was made governor, for they hated the people ; and Maronath desired that his province should not be behind the other provinces. So he went among the people continually and made proclamation unto them, That every man should till the soil as his ability demanded.

Now Aklan, the king of Persia, was crafty and treacherous in his disposition, insomuch that the men of Persia were much oppressed by him ; and he sought cause of war with many nations ; but the chief captains turned aside the purpose of the king, so that he went not to war until the king bethought him and proposed to take the city of Palmyra and the land of Gehalehmot.

And he gathered together an exceeding great army, and came down and sat himself before the city of Palmyra, and ditched against it, and set his engines of war in order about it, and made demand of the king thereof to give him the city and all the plain thereabout.

And the king of Palmyra was taken unawares and durst not move out of his place. So he called his chief men and all his wise counsellors for to see what should be done; and they counseled that there be made terms of peace with the king of Persia. And so the king of the city sent out and sought peace with Aklan.

And Aklan demanded of all the revenues of the city a fourth part, and that the armies of Persia should hold the city continually; and that there should be given of the fairest of the daughters of the city unto the king of Persia for his bed-chamber; and especially should Hermaida, the king's daughter, be given unto the king of Persia.

Now Hermaida was the fairest of all the damsels in all the lands; and the fame of her beauty went forth unto all kindreds; for the king was very old and Hermaida ministered unto him before the people.

So Hermaida heard of all that transpired, and she determined not to go with the king of Persia. She also heard that the king proposed to overrun the land of Gehalehmot, and her resolution was speedily taken.

So when the old king of Palmyra heard the demand of Aklan his heart was filled with sorrow and he knew not what he should do. So he asked of Aklan time to consider the matter, and Aklan said, If the king of Palmyra answereth me not by the rising of the sun to-morrow, then will I overrun his city and make it a heap of desolation.

So in the night Hermaida comforted her father, the old king, and went with a trusty servant and a camel, and came away in haste unto the way of the land of Gehalehmot, first counseling her father to give the city unto the king of Persia.

So Hermaida came through the armies of Persia while they slept, and by the morning she came up with merchants of the land of Gehalehmot; and they cast off their burdens, and brought the young woman in haste unto the presence of Patros, the governor, at the end of fifteen days.

So Hermaida came into the presence of the governor, and told him of the whole matter with tears; and she prayed Patros to go down and help the city of Palmyra with an army. And Patros bid the women of his household to take the damsel and care for her.

And Patros was much troubled and knew not what to do, as the people had no knowledge of the use of the implements of battle. So he cast about him in trouble of spirit.

And Hermaida came in the early watch of the morning, and asked of Patros what he should do. And Patros told her of all that he had thought upon, and that there could be nothing accomplished with the people of Gehalehmot, for they knew not how to do battle.

Then Hermaida arose and went away unto the land of Assyria. And Patros sent an escort of men and of animals with her. So she came unto the chief city of Assyria, and had audience with the king, even Narhaddon. And Narhaddon bid her be of good comfort, and he would consult with his brother, the king of Aegyptus, and they would overthrow the wicked king of Persia.

And the anger of Hermaida was enkindled, and she came away from the presence of the king, and hastened unto her own city. And the time she was absent was five months. And she entered the city in the disguise of a shepherd boy, and hastened to seek her father, but could not find him.

Now the king of Persia had taken the city, and treacherously cast the old king into a dungeon, and spoiled the city and carried off the maidens, and set an army of Persia in the palace and chief places.

And the men of the city were nigh unto an hundred and eighty thousand. So Hermaida was filled with valor, and the spirit of battle came over her; and she went forth secretly and aroused the men of Palmyra, and there was a great uprising of the men of the city. So that the men of Persia said, one to another, What meaneth all this sound of the hammers of the smiths? But they cared not for the men of Palmyra.

So Hermaida caused those who made ready, to assemble at the breaking of the day at the great temple of the sun, in the chief place of the city; and as the sun arose, Hermaida went before the men of the city, and she caused them to fall on the men of Persia, so that they were taken in surprise, and she smote them with great slaughter and spared not any, for they were all in the city, but put them all to the sword; and Hermaida stayed not the hands of the men of the city until there were no more of the men of Persia in the walls of the city of Palmyra. Then she cast out the bodies of the men, and brake the doors of the dungeon and led out her father, the old king, and caused him to be washed and shaved, and to be clothed in the robe of

the king, and set him on the throne and set all things in order.

Then she called the men of the city and assembled them around the great temple, and stood up before them; and her presence was like unto the sun rising in his strength, and she lifted up her voice, and said, As the great Lord of heaven and earth liveth, I will not rest or cease to follow the king of Persia until all the maidens and virgins he hath taken from us are brought back again.

And when she had thus spoken, there arose a mighty shout like unto an hundred thunders; and all the men of the city and all the strangers abiding there united in one voice, and they said, We will go unto the uttermost parts of the earth, and Hermaida shall lead us.

So she gave command that there should be an hundred thousand fighting men prepared, and it was speedily done. And the armorers made Hermaida an armor, and plated it with gold within and without; and she made ready and went out of the city, and rode in a chariot at the head of her army, and went after the king of Persia.

Now Aklan, after he had rioted the city of Palmyra, gat him up and came down into the land of Gehalehmot, and he made haste and came unto the chief city thereof, and stayed not but marched directly thereto. And the walls of the city were strong, but when Patros heard of the coming of the king of Persia, he gave command that the people should all flee unto the mountains. And so when the king of Persia set down before the city he found no one therein. Nevertheless, the fires were yet burning and pottage was yet seething

on the hearths as he entered therein ; and he went into the city, and his army possessed it.

Now the people of the land went out in such haste that they took but little away, and there was much plunder in the city and in the surrounding country ; and the soldiers of the king of Persia went forth and spoiled the land, and burned the houses of the people, and laid the land waste, and slew the animals, and brake down the corn, for the time of harvest was at hand ; and the people of the land were ready to perish in the mountains for hunger, and fear of the army of Persia.

Now Aklan had three score and eight of the fairest of the maidens of the city of Palmyra, and he had them in the palace of the governor of Gehalehmot, and a strong guard of trusty men around them. And he was at his ease in the city, and proposed to go out and follow the men of Gehalehmot, as soon as he rested from his march, and cast them off from the earth.

Now he had collected much spoil of the land, and gathered it together in the chief city of the people, and sent forth continually and spoiled the land, for the spirit of evil disposition had come over him.

Now on a certain day, the men of Persia were driven into the city with much slaughter, and the walls thereof were vehemently stormed from the outside, and ere the king knew of the matter, an army had encompassed the walls, and was breaking them down.

So the king trembled within himself, and sent forth to see who it was that attacked him ; and the messenger returned with this message :

I am Hermaida, the daughter of the king of Palmyra, and the sister of those whom ye have carried off ; and

as the Lord liveth, I will make thee this day as the men whom ye left in the city of Palmyra; and at that time the men outside the walls raised a great shout; and the heart of Aklan died within him, and he fell as one dead.

So the chief general of all the armies of Persia made the best shift he could; but the men of Palmyra brake down the walls and came in, in great vengeance. And the men of Persia fled out of the great gate. And the men of Palmyra fell on them; and there fell that day six score thousand. And the remnant of the army of Persia went away across the desert, and came in sorrow unto their own land.

Now Aklan was in the chamber of the governor's palace, and he was wrapped in the curtain of the governor's bed; and his spirit was dead within him, as he heard the shouting of the people of Palmyra.

And Hermaida bare a sword, and led the people in battle; and when they entered the city, she cast about her for the place where the maidens of Palmyra were kept; and she met a soldier of Persia, and made to smite off his head; but she bid him to tell her where the maidens were and he should be spared; and he led Hermaida unto the place, and she smote the guard and slew him, and brake the door of the palace; but entered not in. Then she commanded the soldier of Persia to lead her to the place of the king; and he led her to the place of the governor's bed chamber, and Hermaida brake the door and went in. And as she went in, the heart of Aklan died within him, and he roared out, and begged for mercy.

Nevertheless, Hermaida smote him in the bed with the sword, and cut off his head, and said:

The mercy thou showest, that shalt thou also receive. And she took the royal crown of Persia, and carried it away; then there was quiet in the city, for the carnage had ceased.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Now the people of Gehalehmot were scattered in the mountains, and there was great distress among the people, and especially among the women and children. And Patros was so filled with sorrow, that he bowed himself and died.

And there was a young man of the household of Exus, and he was filled with wisdom and valor; and he assumed to lead the people, and govern them until such time as a governor should be selected. The name of the youth was Kinaroth, and he had possession of the white stone of Exus, and it never afterward left his kindred, for of the house of Kinaroth came Kinar, the cunning workman.

So Kinaroth arose and gathered the people together, and set them in companies and in families, and distributed provender unto them. And at this time came a messenger from Hermaida, saying, Peace unto the people of Gehalehmot, thine enemy is dead; and thou shalt come down and keep thy land, and hold it in peace.

And Hermaida commanded that there be a great pit dug outside the city; and there were cast therein the slain of the men of Persia; and she raised a great mound over the pit. *And the mound standeth in the land of Gehalehmot, over against the great river unto this day.*

And the messengers of Kinaroth came down and viewed the land, and saw it was true what Hermaida had said. So the people came down, and the army of Hermaida withdrew unto their own land at the time of the latter rains. And the men of Gehalehmot came down, and abode in the hither parts of the land, that the men of Persia had not wasted, and built up other houses and dwelt in peace.

And of all the calamities that had visited the land, and the people of Gehalehmot, this was the most dire; for there died of the people six score thousand men, women and children; and of the produce of the land, there was an hundred and fifty thousand score lahs weight destroyed; and also, a third part of all the beasts of the field, besides houses and other things. And Kinaroth set all the matter before the kings of Assyria and of Aegyptus.

Now, the men of Persia had spoiled the land without cause, and drove out the people, so that they perished in the wilderness by reason of hunger and exposure. And Kinaroth builded up the land, and set boundaries that all should have his portion, and proceeded to restore the prosperity of the people.

Now, Hermaida went into her own city, and carried back the maidens that were taken away and restored them to their own place, and she sware to overrun the land of Persia and cast out the household of Aklan from the earth, for he was evil in his generation. So she gathered together an army of sixty thousand and marched into the land of Persia. And Darah, the brother of Aklan, had recruited the men of Persia, and got a great army and entrenched himself against the coming of the army of Palmyra; and they met the army

of Hermaida over against the borders of the land of Persia, and they came together in battle, and the battle waxed hot, and the slaughter was very great, and there was none that could stand before the army of Palmyra. So when the sun had raised on the third day of the battle, the men of Persia threw down their implements of battle and fled before the army of Hermaida, every man to his own place.

So Darah, the king, arose and went unto his own city and gathered together what men he could, and made shift to defend himself from the anger of the young maiden of Palmyra; but she came apace and encompassed the city about, and prepared to cast down the walls thereof, and brake the battlements of the city. And Darah made engines of war and cast great stones over the walls and slew many of the men of Palmyra. Then Hermaida arose in the vehemence of her spirit and commanded that the engines be cast against the gates; and they fell with a mighty noise, so that the hearts of the men of the city sank within them, and they submitted to the men of Palmyra. And Hermaida gave command that no man should be injured, save the king. But Darah escaped out of the city, and fled no one knew whither. Then did Hermaida send forth proclamation to all the people of Persia, saying:

This day hath the house of Cyrus been overthrown, and I only am ruler of the land of Persia; and it is my intent to rule this people with wisdom and gentleness, if so be that the people be loyal and obedient unto me; and whosoever shall rise in rebellion, him shall I miserably destroy, even to his wives and little ones. Take heed then to my words, and the land of Persia shall be among the greatest of all nations, even like unto the

time of Cyrus, the good king, of whose lineage I also am, being of the house of the ancient kings of Gheba.

So when the people of Persia had heard the proclamation of Hermaida, they said with one accord, The daughter of the ancient kings of Gheba shall be our ruler, for she hath proved to be mighty in war and in valor. So Hermaida put on the crown, and sat on the throne of Persia, and ruled all the land thereof; and the people were satisfied, and had peace for a season.

And the king of Assyria, even Narhaddon, sent unto the king of Aegyptus, even Pharonah, and laid before him all that had happened unto the land of Gehalehmot; and the king of Aegyptus and the king of Assyria made proclamations unto all nations and kindreds and tongues, saying, It has come to the knowledge of the kings of Aegyptus and Assyria, most potent and great, that the king of Persia hath overthrown the land of Gehalehmot, and destroyed a great number of the people thereof, who are a harmless and simple people, who do good and no evil; and hath spoiled their land and made it desolate. Now, it pleaseth us to ask of the ruler of the land of Persia to make amends unto the people of Gehalehmot, and to repay them for the spoiling of their land, and to make treaty of peace with them. In such case as the ruler of the land of Persia refuseth to so make amends, then will the kings of Assyria and of Aegyptus be compelled to go to battle with the ruler of Persia.

Then did the matter come before Hermaida, the queen of the land of Persia; and she sent forth proclamation unto the kings of Assyria and of Aegyptus, saying:

It has come to the knowledge of us, the most potent

sovereign of all the land of Persia, that the great kings of Assyria and Aegyptus hath made proclamation concerning the matter of the land of Gehalehmot. Now be it known that when the land of Gehalehmot was sore pressed, and the city of Palmyra was spoiled, that the daughter of the king of Palmyra, even I, Hermaida, went unto the king of Assyria and set before him all these things, and he moved not to help the land of Gehalehmot, or the city of Palmyra, but sat in his palace. And the daughter of the king of Palmyra got the men of Palmyra together and overran the land of Gehalehmot, and sought out the cruel king of Persia, and smote him heavily and dispersed his army, and slew the king, and set the men of Gehalehmot in their own land; and then overthrew the house of the king, and conquered the kingdom of Persia, and now rule the land thereof.

Now hear, all nations, that if the kings of Assyria and of Aegyptus desire to be friendly to the ruler of Persia, then she is willing to make a treaty of peace with them; otherwise let them come forth and meet the armies of Persia in battle.

And the proclamation of the queen came unto the the kings of Assyria and of Aegyptus. And they had no answer to give, for they were discomfited. And the people of the other nations honored the queen of Persia, and derided the kings.

So Hermaida sat on the throne of Persia. And she was twenty years old when she began to reign; and her reign was more glorious than any which went before. She also tear down the temples of fire, and drave out the priests thereof, and set aside the worship of fire; and builded the great city of Sofranah and beau-

tified it, and made it the astonishment of all nations.

And she made the city of Palmyra to be free, and gave unto it the merchandise of the highway of nations, and set it on a firm foundation; and made her younger brother, Ekfah, to be king of all that land. And she was great and famous; and she took her name as the great queen of Persia.

And her name is written in the history of that land as Zenobia, the great queen; and all nations have read of the fame of the great queen.

So Kinaroth ruled the people of Gehalehmot, and he was a wise and good man, and one who loved his people and did right; and the queen of Persia made a treaty of peace and friendship with him, and privately gave of the substance of the land unto the people of Gehalehmot; so that at the end of twenty years the land was as prosperous as at first.

And Kinaroth knew that the land must needs be exposed unto the avarice of nations, so he counselled the people to follow in the way of the fathers of the land, and not to lay up great treasures in the land, lest the nations fall upon them again.

So he set up schools where the wisdom of all nations was taught, and the people returned unto the customs of their fathers, and there was peace and quiet throughout all the land.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Then was Kinaroth governor of the land of Gehalehmot. And the people were cast down and broken in spirit, for more than one-third part of the people fell in the wilderness from hunger and exposure; for the king of Persia cast them out of their own land, and spoiled their land as far as the tomb of Exus.

And Kinaroth was wise in his generation, and he made proclamation unto the people, saying: We will no more have aught to do with the men of the nations, save in such manner as is very necessary, and in such way as we cannot avoid.

And so it was that the people returned unto the simple and child like habits of their fathers, and had no more dealings with the people of other nations. And in time did the people of Gehalehmot cast off their mourning for those who had fallen in the wilderness, and builded a moument unto Patros, the governor, beside the monument of Exus and Manos.

And Kinaroth, the governor, went continually through the land, and strengthened the people, and caused them to build up that which had been broken down by the men of Persia, and he also received much from Hermaida the queen.

So now it behooveth us to tell of the kingdoms of Persia, and of Assyria, and of Aegyptus. There arose other kings, even Hykos of Aegyptus, and Shalmanazer of Assyria, for the other kings thereof had died,

and the new kings knew not of the land of Gehalemot, nor cared therefor; and they made treaty of peace together, and became jealous of the power of Persia, insomuch that they determined to go down and meet the queen thereof in battle, and break the power of the army of Persia.

So they made preparations and came down as far as the great plain of the desert, beyond the way of the city of Palmyra; and they set themselves to march against the land of Persia.

Now the queen of Persia had spies in the lands of Assyria and Aegyptus; and they heard of the matter, and came out privately, and quickly went and told the queen of Persia of the matter. And she sent forth proclamations unto the governors of provinces, and unto the chief captains, and unto all the great men of Persia, and bid them go forth and stir up the people, and bring them forth to battle.

Now the land of Persia was an exceeding great and populous land, and there was much people in it, and they were much delighted to go to battle, for they were very great and strong; and there were great preparations. And the queen soon saw around her an army of eight hundred thousand choice men, large and strong. And she went forth, and rode upon an elephant, and viewed all the army; and she caused them to practice continually all the movements of battle. And this she did continually for the space of six months. And on a certain day was there word brought unto the queen, saying: There cometh an army, and they are as the leaves on the trees for multitude, and they have crossed over the borders of the land of Persia, and have burned the houses, and are laying waste all the land before them.

So the spirit of battle came over the queen, and she quickly made the people ready, by hundreds of thousands, and sent them in order; one hundred thousand a half day's journey, behind, another hundred thousand, and so on, until all the army was in motion, and the queen went ahead of the first; and this because she had known that it is not good to have too large an army together; and she quickly came unto where the armies of Assyria and of Aegyptus were; and she fell upon them at the third hour of the day, with the first hundred thousand; and the men of Assyria and of Aegyptus were brought to battle speedily; and at the ninth hour, came another hundred thousand of the men of Persia, and fell on the side of the armies of Assyria and Aegyptus, and smote them heavily, so that they were faint. Then did the night come, and two more hundred thousand of the men of Persia, and fell in order on the other side of the armies of Assyria and Aegyptus, so that when the morning was come, behold, the land was covered with the hosts of Persia; and the sun arose, and Hermaida blew a trumpet, and cast the armies of Persia upon the armies of Assyria and Aegyptus, and the battle was very great, so that the noise thereof went up to heaven; and there was that day such a battle as we cannot wish to see again, for the best men of battle on earth were therein. And at the third hour of the morning came yet another hundred thousand of the men of Persia, fresh and valiant, and they speedily cast themselves into battle. Now the kings of Assyria and of Aegyptus rode in one chariot, and they were young men and full of valor, and the word was brought to them, saying: There come continually fresh armies of Persia, and they

are as the stars of heaven for multitude. And the armies of the king were sore pressed, so that they were failing, and when the night came there arose a mighty wind, and the armies of the kings withdrew thence and fell back toward the city of Palmyra, for the kings saw that the armies would surely be overcome by the superior numbers and freshness of the army of Persia. So they came away in haste, and rested not until they came unto the land of Assyria, for the king of Aegyptus turned aside into his own country.

So when the morning was come, the wind continued, so that the queen could not go to battle that day; and the armies rested there; and on the second morning the queen looked forth, and lo, there was naught to be seen in all the plain, save the army of Persia; and Hermaida arose, and took her army and marched down in haste unto the land of Assyria, and she sent a quick messenger unto her brother, the king of Palmyra, saying: Prepare in haste, provender for the armies of Persia, and he did so; and it was brought after the army, for the queen tarried not; and so she came unto the land of Assyria, but gave command, saying, Hurt not the land, neither burn nor slay, for we war against the king and the army of this land, and not against the people of it. And the king went unto his chief city and scorned the army of Persia, for the walls of the city were every strong, and he had sent unto Hykos, the king of Aegyptus, bidding him come in haste, for the army of Persia sat before his city; and so Shalmanezer drank wine and rioted in his palace, for he cared not for the army of Persia, but awaited the army of Hykos. But Hykos said within himself, It is meet that I should defend my own land, for if the queen

overcometh the land of Assyria, then will she turn in and spoil my land. So he moved not from his place, but strengthened the borders of his own land, and made ready to defend it. So the army of Aegyptus came not to help the army of Assyria.

And at the end of eight months, the chief men of Assyria were much moved with shame, and called on the king to lead them forth against the army of Persia, for they were sore ashamed of being set at naught by the men of Persia.

And on a certain day the king sent word unto the queen, saying, On such a day will the army of Assyria come out, and meet them in battle. Then did the queen draw off her army, and made ready sixty furlongs distance from the city.

And the army of Assyria came out of the gates of the city, and went out to meet the army of Persia; and they drew down within two bow shot of the men of Persia, and stayed; and neither army came unto battle, for their blood was cold, and they cared not to meet each other; and there was silence all that day. And at night there was no battle, for neither came to meet the other.

But when the morning was come, the king of Assyria thought to take the queen of Persia by craft, and while it was yet dark he moved quickly forth, and fell upon the army of Persia; but they were old fighting men, and valorously arose and went into battle; but the army of Assyria had the better of them, and pressed them heavily, so that they fell away, and departed toward the plain; but the queen rode into the army and stayed them, and turned them about, so that they fell no more away, but pressed the army of Assyria

unto the gates of the city, and so neither prevailed; but the army of Assyria entered the gates, and the army of Persia drew away to the plain.

Now the queen had sent unto her chief governor, and he sent unto her six hundred thousand other men, and she encamped again around the city.

And Shalmanezzer sent forth and gathered together a great multitude of the men of Assyria. And they came over against the army of Persia, and stayed at the distance of four hundred furlongs from the city. Then the queen thought to break the walls of the city, and she set great engines against it, and cast great stones against the walls; but they brake not, for they were exceeding strong.

So the king sent privately and gathered all the army outside the city and brought them up, and set them behind the armies of Persia, and came out of the city and fell upon the army of Persia, and smote them before and behind.

But the men of Persia were very valiant, and did valiantly; so that at the going down of the sun was there no advantage on either side. And thus did the battle proceed without advantage, until the queen saw she must take the city by craft, for the men of Assyria were well skilled in battle.

So on a certain night she drew off her army, and as if she was departing unto her own land; and went no further than the city of Palmyra, and there refreshed her army, until at the end of four months, she came down in haste and encamped against the great city of Assyria, even Bablona, and stormed it vehemently.

And the king was taken very much by surprise, for he thought the army of Persia had departed unto its

own land. Nevertheless, the king was valiant, and he called out what men and soldiers were in the city; for the most part of the army had gone to their own places; and he resisted valiantly.

Now the queen supposed that there were but few men in the city, and she came vehemently against the great gates to the northward, and cast great beams against them, so that they were broken. And the men of Persia essayed to enter. And the conflict waged hot at the great gate. So the women of the city stood upon the wall by the gate and cast stones down upon the men of Persia.

And Hermaida looked and saw the women of the city fighting on the walls, and her heart smote within her. And at the going down of the sun she went into her own tent; and the spirit of valor departed from her for she had the heart of a woman, and she thought of naught but the women on the walls. So at the morning she drew off the army of Persia, and went into her own land; and thus was the war at an end.

But as soon as the army of Persia drew off, Shalmanezer would no longer be taken by craft, but gathered together a vast army, and made ready for the return of the army of Persia; but it came no more in the land at that time.

Then was there a coldness between the kings of Assyria and of Aegyptus, for the king of Aegyptus came not down to help the king of Assyria to war against the queen of Persia.

In the land of Mezzinaroth:

Jeboran was sixty and five years old, and his strength was very great; and he had neither sons nor daughters until this time. And when he was seventy and five

years old, and Algoonah was an hundred and twenty-six years old, was there a son born unto Jeboran. And the child was taken unto Algoonah, and he held it up in his arms and stood up before the people and blessed the child. And they asked Algoonah what he should be called, and Algoonah said, His name shall be Amiel, which is in the speech of the land, "Great King." And Algoonah was overcome with the speech of prophecy, and he said, Unto this child is given the greatest and mightiest work that hath been given unto any one since the world first began, and in his hands shall be the dividing of nations.

So after Algoonah had ceased speaking they all departed unto their own place.

And Jeboran was minded to go forth and view all the provinces and set them in order, and view the progress of each, for he was minded to see where he should build his chief city; and where he should abide at such time as he should leave the province of Jeshurim.

So he went forth unto the province of Osurus, and into the province of Albanas. And the people thereof came out to meet him. And he viewed all the land; and it was satisfactory to Jeboran. And he said unto the governor of the land of Albanas, Here will I build my chief city, and here will I abide; for this land only pleaseth me.

So the foundations were laid and the city was commenced. And there were a great multitude of workmen at labor continually building the city, which should be the chief place of the king Jeboran.

And Jeboran returned, and viewed the land of Gonath, and the land of Mestus, and the land of Biariah, and the land of Tervan, and saw the prosperity of the

people; for they had builded great threshing floors, and great store-houses; so that all the land of Mezzinaroth overflowed with the produce of the earth.

And the king Jeboran was pleased, and saw the prosperity of the land, and went in and told unto Algoonah of all that he saw, as was his wont. And Algoonah blessed the land, and the people thereof, and said, May they thus be, unto the latest generations. But sadness covered the face of Algoonah, and he said, It will not be as I desire.

In the land of Persia:

Now when the queen returned into her own country she was sad of heart; and she loved not war, only in defense of her own land; so to amuse her mind she commanded that the ancient history of her land be collected together, and that it be read before her. So it was done. And among the histories that had been put away, was found the poem read before the king, which was written by him who was afterward the governor of the land of Gehalehmot, even Manos.

And the queen commanded that it be read before her in the presence of all the court; and it was done.

So the chief man of the inner court stood up and read before the queen, as followeth:

HODRAH.

AN EPIC POEM.

CANTO I.

SCENE I.

(IN THE GARDEN OF PARADISE.)

Ariel, an Archangelic Spirit newly created talking with himself.

Life! Life! Life!

O whence doth come this new sensation—Life?

Yea, life I have, and power to think, to talk,
To reason, and express my thoughts in words;
And reason clearly, calling things by name.

Whence, whence again, doth come this power?

It doth not come by happy chance,

Or circumstance fortuitous.

This, then, is clear: I here do live and think;

And clearer still, I came not here by chance.

Ah! now I feel, I know, I have a cause,

An origin greater far than I;

And, rapturous thought, a cause most potent,

Great, yea more than great, greatly good,

And pure, and wise. My being thrills

With rapture new. The thought divine,

A Being pure and grandly good.

Good! What is good? I am good.

Then He who did me create is grandly good.

And evil, Ha! this icy thrill that fills my breast,

Full well I feel what evil is.

Yet 'tis far from me, though self-existent,

A thing abstract, dim, yet still defined.

O rapturous thought! this Being who did me create

Is near—is here—His presence all around,

He hears, and speaks unto mine inmost soul.

O rapture all divine, yet hardly full, for I
Am all alone, yet not alone;
A presence yet is always here, the Great Eternal Here;
But fellowship I lack—One higher not than I,
With whom to hold communion sweet.
I am content; 'tis well; I feel 'tis well;
Supremely blest am I. A guiding Hand I feel,
And know his Presence ever near, to cherish, comfort me;
I feel e'en now a new desire—To move; 'tis done;
I move, I fly. I change my place and range at will
The wide and boundless dome of heaven;
I speed with rapid wing from side to side,
Yet cannot 'scape the Presence ever near.
Blest thought! But ha! what shape appears?
'Tis he; yes, 'tis he! A being like myself.
Thrice rapturous thought! O spirit archangelic. Speak!

GABRIEL.

Hail, first-born son of light! I know thee now,
'Tis thee I've ranged the wide expanse around,
And sought with care, O brother mine.
O rapture grandly sweet! I meet thee here,
And feel thy influence on my soul.
Thou pure, and good, and lovely art;
And so am I. And yet I feel the Presence grand,
Of something far more pure and good, and great.
We are but creatures of that essence pure, supreme and good.

ARIEL.

And so I feel, and long have felt;
And ere thy fellowship of kindred sweet,
I long did muse in thought profound,
And all came bright, and strong and clear.
There is a power, O greater far than we;
Else could we not have been create.
I cannot thee, nor canst thou me create,
Nor could we both, a being like ourselves,
O vastly less in thought or power, bring forth.
'Tis true, and rapture great the thought pursues,
That there is One who made and keeps with care—
Yea, keeps with care. A rapture new doth fill my mind
To thank, to bless, to praise, for He can ever hear;
Then let us with one accord.

ARIEL AND GABRIEL BOTH TOGETHER.

O, Being, grand and great, and pure and good!
In all perfection just. We, thy created creatures, fall
Before thee, with our thanks, our praise.
Be pleased to hear and thou accept our love
And adoration full; 'tis all we have to give.

ARIEL.

'Tis now I feel that well we've done
To render up this grateful praise.
'Tis worship. That I feel, and move;
It is the highest work that we can do.
It brings its sweet reward. A bliss
Without alloy, and peace and joy complete.

GABRIEL.

And so I feel. But lo, thy vision cast
To yonder shape, like ours. O rapture new,
Another one—a spirit pure and good.

ENTER ISRAFEL, SPEAKING.

'Tis true, they're there; my quest is done,
And they do there before me stand
In shape angelic. Beauty radiant, grand,
And emanations from the Power Supreme,
That I do always feel so near.
I something felt as lacking still,
My bliss divine to consummate.
They here are found. Hail brothers dear!

ARIEL AND GABRIEL.

New cause we have for praise, blest three,
To hold communion sweet and pure
With one another, and to feel so near.

ISRAFEL.

I know and feel that all of us do feel alike.
Our thoughts, our minds, are one, yet so distinct,
Apart for converse and communion sweet,
Yet one in heart and voice for praise.
And He whose presence all do feel so near,
Of Him I more would know. I more already feel,
A word it all defines, expresses full—Father!

ALL THREE TOGETHER.

Father Divine. O, hear our praise.
We thank thee for creative power;
We thank thee for preserving care;
We thank thee for sustaining love,
And for communion with our kindred ones.
O, ever keep thou near, and guard us with thy fear.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

My brethren two, we're not alone;
As I now feel, another one draws near.
Ah! there he comes. Angelic one, all hail!

RAPHAEL SPEAKS.

What! can I believe? or am I now deceived,
By shapes create of fevered dream? Ah, no!
'Tis they whom I have sought to fill this void,
So dim, so undefined? They're kindred ones.

ARIEL, GABRIEL, AND ISRAFEL.

O transport new, and all divine, new pleasures grant,
Another one to share our joy, and converse sweet.

RAPHAEL SPEAKS.

I sought you from an instinct undefined—
And knew not what it was I sought,
But felt a void; I knew full well
'Twas you. Ye sons of light divine.

ENTER MICHAEL, MINUEL, AND SAMIEL, SPEAKING.

Hail! sons of light; Hail! joy supreme;
We all together, Archangels seven,
And first born of the sons of Heaven.

ARIEL, GABRIEL, ISRAFEL, RAPHAEL, MICHAEL, MINUEL, AND SAMIEL
TOGETHER.

O Father, all Supreme, we thank Thee for Thy care.

SCENE II.

SONG OF THE ARCHANGELS.

Thou who inhabitest all Immensity—
And filleth all the bounds of space,
Who from the Everlasting art,
And ever, ever shall exist—
Thou, Thou alone art over all,

And Father of the universe,
Creator wise, supremely good,
Sustainer of Thy handiwork;
Be pleased to hear Thy children, seven.
We thank Thee, O our Father good;
We praise Thee, O Creator great;
We bless Thee, O Sustainer kind;
And love Thee for Thy constant care.
Accept our thanks; Our minds improve,
So we new beauties still can see.
Be ever near; Thy presence lend,
To keep us through eternity.
We thank Thee, we praise Thee,
We bless Thee, we love Thee;
O keep us to the end—Amen.

And thus they sang. Seven new born sons of light,
Resplendent fair; Of the Great Cause, befitting types;
All pure, all good, for purpose wise and grand.
And at the head, high reared and fair,
Stood Ariel chief of all the cherubim,
And countless hosts, as yet created not.
And as they stood in earnest converse there,
They spake of great mysterious things.
First, of the Great Creative Power.
Unseen; unknown; so far, yet ever near.
And as they talk, their minds expand,
And farther into hidden things they see.
Enraptured all, save one, who stood apart,
With look downcast, and crest abased,
Samiel, last create; no word he spake,
'Till urged long, at length found speech.

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

Thou tell'st of joy and rapture full,
And thoughts sublime; I feel it not
To such a great degree;
'Tis true, in being I rejoice,
And know a Cause all great and good
Did bring us here; but can not feel
The love ye simulate so well,
Like billows vast, my being overwhelm.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

Samiel, son of light, refulgent beam
Of that Great Essence; thou art one
Well favored—last born son of that great train
Of heavenly hosts; Chief of a seraphic host—
Then can'st thou feel thy great estate?
Thy speech doth wound me much.

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

Though here with thee, archangels bright,
My great estate is not as yours.
Ye all are holy, good, and pure,
While I am not. The wrong is in my breast.

ARIEL, GABRIEL, ISRAFEL, RAPHAEL, MICHAEL, MINUEL—ALL SPEAK.

O, fearful words! O, fearful thought!
To hear a spirit newly formed and pure,
Speak in such dark and impious way.
O Samiel! son of light, speak, speak again,
And cast this darkness from our minds.

SAMIEL.

Alas, I cannot change a grand decree.
Undone am I, my doom is past recall.
I first was pure, as are ye all;
But I have set myself above the power
Of Him who all my being formed,
And chafed the power that binds me down.
Henceforth undone, I range alone the vast expanse,
And feel the woe of him who disobeys.
Farewell; 'tis just. I go alone. [Samiel departs.

THE SIX ARCHANGELS.

Woe; woe in Heaven; he goes; is gone.
His fate severe is past recall.
A being bright, O bitter woe!
Hath lost his bright and pure estate. [They all lament.

So six alone were left; in sad dismay
And fear, they stand bereft,
But soon the blest assurance comes,

That He who is so good, so pure, is also just,
And will the good sustain, and change the fate
Of him who disobeys;
And soon their joy was full again.
And Samiel journeyed forth alone, downcast and sad,
No more to hold communion sweet,
And with archangels bright rejoice.

CANTO II.

The six Archangels on the battlements of Heaven, conversing.

MICHAEL SPEAKS.

Gone! Gone! from out the realm of peace,
Love, light and joy; henceforth outcast, and in the depths
Of solitude to roam alone—yea, all alone,
But feeling ever near, a presence dread and undefined,
From which he cannot 'scape.
Outcast, yet in communion with an inner voice,
More fearful far than utter loneliness.
We yet remain, the favored sons of light,
Our joy is full and calm—serene;
And Samiel shall forgotten be, as if he never were.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

Yea, gone; thou has't well spoken, valiant one;
His fate is all his own, we need not mourn
The hapless fate of him who courts despair.
And now I know the meaning dread,
Of that foul word the opposite of good—
Evil. Well did I tremble as I mused
When first the light of reason dawned.

GABRIEL SPEAKS.

All just, as well as good and pure, and wise
Is He who ruleth all his handiwork.

RAPHAEL SPEAKS.

His fate is sad, yet well deserved;
And we can yet rejoice, unmindful that he's gone.

MINUEL SPEAKS.

Fallen is he who once was high and great;
His bright estate is gone in utter night.

ISRAFEL SPEAKS.

Hark! what music sweet steals o'er my sense?
Hear, all ye angelic spirits, hear!

ALL TOGETHER.

O joy untold, O sound entrancing sweet.

SCENE III.

▲ HOST OF CHERUBIM SEEN APPROACHING IN THE DISTANCE.

Lo, wondrous scene, for while they gazed,
A vast array of shining cherubim
With rapid wing encompassed all the concave dome,
And with enraptured song the welkin rang.

So straightway joined the cherubim,
The archangelic band; And praises loud,
Filled all the wide expanse of Heaven,
And myriads more, crowd 'round the central throng,
Winging their flight to swell the anthem grand.

SONG OF THE CHERUBIM.

Shout on! shout on! angelic host,
Hosannah to the Highest cry;
Sing loud ye archangelic band,
Fill all the dome of Heaven high.

So loud they sang, and sweeter far,
That Samiel, wild outcast did hear,
And fearful evil took his soul, and raged within
Like burning mountain, in whose bowels heave
The surging waves of liquid fire.
And he who first went forth downcast and sad,
Returned with burning malice full;
Then breathing vengeance 'gainst the pure and good,
And e'en the first Great Cause,
Samiel, in deadly hate returned.
'Tis he who hath been first so high,
Can downward sweep to lowest depths;
For little souls can only move through smaller space.

So Samiel came, his presence hid in simulated smile,
And 'mid the cherubim went forth;
His purpose dark, with vile intent surcharged,
To be not one alone outcast.
For 'tis darker side of wrong that he who falls
Is not content to fall alone,
But seeks to have companions in his misery.

SCENE III.

Ariel, first born son of light, the chief of all the cherubim,
And forth he stood, and as he spake
A silence deep came over all the host.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

O archangelic spirits five, and countless hosts,
Hear all. 'Tis fitting that ye sweetly sing,
And with sweet music, fill the wide expanse;
For He who formed us fair and pure,
Is meet to have our homage fair.
But not alone for praise were we create,
A purpose wise and great is under all;
A work to do, an end divinely grand to fill,
Hath shaped the being of ye all. [Ariel ceases speaking.]

So each expectant stood to further hear
The import of his words. And long he spake,
And told them of the first emotions of his being.
Then loud again rang forth the song of praise
Triumphant high, throughout the wide expanse.
Meanwhile, the fallen one, with dire intent,
Moved forth among the shining host,
And with his dark designs concealed behind
A shining front, till full one third
Of all the shining train, went forth with him,
And sang, All praise to Samiel, great and wise.
Then up arose, with sword of flame,
Michael, the valiant son of light,
And o'er the ramparts high of Heaven
Hurled forth the lost archangel and his throng.
Down, down they fall, in swifter flight
Than ever sped the burning ray of light from pole to pole,
Like blazing star unto the darker nether world.
And as they speed their rapid fall, headlong
They plunge into gulf of latent fire.

SCENE IV.

SAMIEL IN PANDEMONTIUM.

Then up arose the fallen one, so changed,
His form of grace divine turned into sable hue,
And for angelic pinions, dark rattling wings;
And as he rose, the sulphurous wave,
As by some impulse moved below,
High heaved, and lashed the caverned walls
In ceaseless fury, like some lost spirit,
Beating 'gainst its cage in wild remorse.

So Samiel rose, and on a shapeless crag
That lifted high its phantom head,
Took station, then loudly called
Unto his lost and fallen cherubim.

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

O hosts, that once were high and pure,
And 'mid celestial hosts high swelled
The note of praise, why rest ye here
Within the dungeon walls of utter woe?
'Tis but the flat harsh of grim, remorseless justice;
But we can still create a joy beyond our fate,
To bring still more to writhe and groan
Within this bed of anguish, and divide our fate.

[Samiel ceases.]

Then up arose a shout that smote
The farther bounds of that dark, seething pit;
A shout, of hellish malice fraught,
And rising high above the sullen roar
Of surging waves of fire, re-echoed through
The vault of dark perdition.
So Samiel deeply laid the scheme
To thwart the kind decrees of heaven,
And turn the steps of others to his fiery den.
But not within the realm of Paradise,
Could Samiel come—forever doomed to stay beyond
The farthest bound of that blest land.

SCENE V.

In the Gardens in Paradise.

O loved and blest employ of spirits blest,
To range the pure and boundless realm of heaven,
And join the choir of cherubim;
Such was the choice estate of those who faithful were,
Archangels six, and countless hosts of cherubim;
And as they mused and spake and converse held,
New depths of wisdom in their breasts unfold;
Justice is stern, severe, yet good;
Protection to the pure who do no wrong.
For he who hath infection in his soul
Doth charge his venom on the innocent,
If let remain in fellowship.
So Samiel and his host cast out,
Could do no farther wrong to Heaven's sons.
Heaven, O matchless land of peace and joy!
A wide expanse of verdure, bright and glorious.
And gold-paved streets, and crystal streams,
Suffused in mellow haze; and over all the light divine,
Effulgent with the great creative power—
Eternal home of spirits ever blest,
Thy light doth cast on earth's confines a hallowed glow;
Far, far beyond the stars most distant found,
Doth lie the home of blest futurity;
And sometimes, when the golden gates stand half ajar,
The fainting, earth-worn trav'ler sees its ray,
And joyous lifts his failing eye to see
The entrance to his grand, eternal home.
O far off land of Paradise! When mortal shores grow dim,
O let the fainting, weary feet find safe abode
Within thy bounds of peace, eternal peace.
The great archangel spirits saw this scene,
Ariel, first born, and chief of Heaven's host;
Michael, the valiant son of light;
And each, as silent stood, enraptured
With the grandeur of the sight,
Until, far off, a strain seraphic, grand,
Of praise and love came from the host
Of cherubim, forth from the distant plain.
Hark! hear the notes of praise and joy.

SONG OF THE CHERUBIM.

Allelujah! Praise Him who formed us all.
Praise Him who formed archangels, seven,
Praise Him who made the cherubim,
And all the wide expanse of Heaven,
High over all, Eternal One,
Thy Presence fills the world above,
The universe Thy dwelling place,
O help us fill Thy courts with love.

CANTO III.

SCENE I.

Ariel standing in the sun looking at the newly created world.

O wondrous, grand, sublime and glorious scene,
That meets the gaze of him who saw at first,
The rolling orbs of Heaven's celestial vault
March forth in grand and solemn tread,
Each in his own appointed bound.
Far, far beyond the utmost gaze of cherubim,
Or archangelic spirits, farther, farther still,
And yet no bound nor limit held,
To all the starry multitude of worlds.
So vast, so boundless was the scene,
That Ariel, mute, spell-bound, looked on;
And still he gazed, as other worlds
New formed, sped out before his raptured sight,
Till one he saw, rough, dark, forbidding,
Like the nether world of night.
Go forth, a whisper seemed to say, And see
The grandest part of great creation's work.
So Ariel went, swift flying on he sped,
Nor stayed, till on a spectral peak,
Uplifted from the chaos dark below,
His feet did rest. Then round he cast
His gaze, bewildered by the scene he saw.
All writhing like tortuous tongues of lambent flame,
The seething vapors twined and hissed
In wild confusion 'neath his feet.

'Twas earth—this rude uncouth turmoil
Of elemental masses crude, was Nature taking form
And shape, to better fit it for its use.
And lo, while yet he stood amazed
A thick'ning gloom came down apace;
The crag was hidden, and the wild scene
Was covered with the cloak of earth's first night.
O, solemn, dark and fearful sight—
To one who ever basked in that refulgent beam
Which lit the realm of Paradise.
But fearless all, and filled with joy he stood,
For well he felt the Presence of the One who made
The night as well as day, and light refulgent beam.
So Ariel stood, expectant, calm and confident,
Till glimmering through the darkness grim
A new, a lovely light broke forth—
'Twas Earth's first morning. And light material
Beam of Heaven's refulgent ray shone o'er the deep.
So Ariel gazed, and high above the mass
'Rose shores all well defined and clear;
And 'mid the parting mass, rolled floods
Of new formed water, meeting on the bound
Where shore and flood found each his place.
So fair, complete and clear each stood;
Yet wild, and wasted was the view;
High rounded rose the granite hills
From hither chaos; that the mind, absorbed,
Gazed spell-bound at the quick transform.
The clouds, that low above hung dark and grim,
Retreated shivering at the coming dawn;
Then upward springing from the deep,
Piercing the vap'rous clouds, and misty veil,
Arose the new-born sun, in splend'rous light;
And o'er the wave, like footfalls of the cherubim,
Sped the first zephyr of Creation's morn.
Soon fled the clouds, mass after mass,
And o'er the wide waste of hill and wave
Curved the blue firmament of heaven.
Long Ariel stood, and gazed enwrapt,
To see the splendor of Earth's second day.
And to the higher dome, with whispering lip
He raised a mute thanksgiving to the First Great Cause.

So rose the sun, high circling in the azure vault;
Then lower waned; then disappeared
Below the flood's most distant bound.
And lo, soon as his fiercer rays depart,
O, wond'rous sight! the blue expanse above
Was sprinkled o'er with countless hosts
Of dazzling globes, all worlds like this;
And soon another sun, full-orbed yet mild,
Arose in splendor bright, to cheer
The glooming hours of sullen night.
O, scene of splendor, grand, sublime and vast,
That Ariel viewing, murmured oft a prayer,
Seeing still more of wisdom, love and power,
In the handiwork of Him who formed it all.
But night wore on apace, and soon the dawn
Again came in the east, and soon the sun
Resumed his ceaseless daily round.
Again the rapt archangel looked, and lo,
The hills and vales were covered o'er
With grass, and herbs, and plants and trees.
The breeze, soft murmuring through the groves,
Swayed back and forth their boughs,
As if the angels gently went between;
And seem'd voices whispering love and praise,
And back returned laden with soft perfume.
O, beauteous sight, of grove, of tufted herb and grass.
But something seemed still lacking; life was not
As yet upon the scene. So patient stood
And much expectant, Ariel waiting yet another day.
Soon down behind the western hill, the sun
Slow sank, as loath to leave the wondrous scene;
Then night came down, cool, soft and still.
Again the firmament above resplendent shone
With glittering worlds, far, far beyond
The great archangel's wisest ken.
Again, in harmony sublime, the twinkling host
Performed their mighty round. Then morning dawned,
And hark! What rapturous melody
The ear assails! The trees no longer mute
Nor void of life—The birds their first sweet song
Of happy praise and voice harmonious raise.
From spray to spray on glittering wing

Like angels, speed in new created life.
So Ariel saw, with long unwearied gaze,
The lofty eagle's flight, the sea-bird's wheeling way;
And bright and beauteous birds of every kind,
All glorious pass before his gaze.
And down within the pearly wave
Disport in rude yet bright array,
The monsters of the briny flood. And fishes too,
Like things of nether air, yet beauteous all;
For all was fair, and bright and good.
So night again her curtain drew
Around the tired world, and hid the scene.
The grand and solemn march of worlds went on;
And Ariel, lifting up his chastened brow, exclaimed
O Father, wise and good, Omnipotent,
Thy works proclaim Thy being, and Thy name
Is written on Thy glorious works.
The fool alone is he that cannot see;
But yet, each day, a higher, better grade
Of beings brings. What shall I yet behold?
Again the rosy morn dispelled the gloomy shade
And earth was vocal with a myriad tongues
Of feathered songsters, warbling forth their praise.
But wondrous sight, of beasts and creeping things
The earth alive, of beautiful and brilliant things,
And monstrous too, yet all harmonious as at first;
And each went forth, and ranged the hills and vales,
In peace and quiet, none afraid of harm.
So, long he gazed, and did not tire to see
The wonders of the new created world.
So passed the day, and night came on,
And in the ear of Ariel seemed a voice:
It said, Go, and all the host,
Archangels and the cherubim, bring forth,
And rest upon this place; and ye shall see
The purpose and the chief design of all this world.
Away sped Ariel, like the swiftest flight of thought,
Nor rested not until within the bound
Of Paradise he stood. Then leading forth
The train of heavenly spirits to the earth;
Then each expectant stood, in silent awe
To see the great and wondrous purpose that should be
The grandest work of great Omnipotence.

Nor long they stood, until the east
Blushed with the rosy light of coming day,
And hill and grove burst forth in vocal praise,
And all the beasts disported on the verdure green,
While monsters of the deep, high heaved their mighty forms;
None mute or idle, all were full of life and praise.
The wondering angels gazed with rapture overcome,
At all the multitude of living things.
But soon a hush proclaimed the near approach
Of some event, momentous, wonderful and grand.
A voice seemed wispering in the wind,
Behold, O angels, cherubim, he comes, he comes.
Forth walked from out the grove, with port erect, sublime,
The only image of the Great First Cause, Man.
Man, in beauty transcendental, man, in form and mind
Like Him who did all create, pure, fair and good:
And nature seemed to bow around him,
All silent, hushed, and overcome with fear.
The heavenly host enraptured gaze,
The voice seemed murmuring in the breeze,
Behold the highest noblest work,
The lord of earth, the master of created things,
The image of the great Invisible One
E'en higher, grander than the cherubim,
Or the angel band of Heaven,
The reflex of the great Intelligence.
And then as if each tongue unloosed,
The angels, cherubim, and all the host,
Set up a grand triumphal song —
The stars all sang the music of the spheres,
And thus the heavenly host did sing.

SONG OF THE ARCHANGELS AND CHERUBIM.

All praise and all honor shall ever be given,
To Him who made all the earth and the heaven.
Who formed all the worlds that inhabit the skies,
From all living things let his praises arise.

We praise Thee O Father divine,
Omnipotent Maker of all,
We bow at Thy glorious throne,
In Thy presence let archangels fall;
Hallelujah, Hallelujah, Amen.

CANTO IV.

Man in the Earthly Paradise Prepared for Him.

So man walked forth in new created life;
Upright and fair to see; well formed,
More beauteous far than cherubim;
Create for purpose wise, noblest work of Him
Who made the rolling worlds or shining host;
Fit chief and end of all creation's varied mass,
Though all was perfect in its kind, entire and good.
Forth went the host of Heaven on rapid wing,
Until they reached the utmost bound
Of worlds create, and entered Paradise;
Save Ariel, lingering back. From world to world
On lightning wing he sped, obedient to the voice
That spake within. And soon he saw approach
With mien erect and bright, yet haggard all and wild.
T'was Samiel seeking the home of man,
With purpose dark, and hellish malice full,
To blast the fair estate, and drag him down
To that dark pit from whence he came.
Then covering up his foul design, with masked mien —

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

Whence lieth this new world, so pure and fair?
I too would view its pleasant vales and hills,
And see the being fair that thou hast seen.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

Hence, demon foul! to thy dark vault return,
And howl and gnash in speechless woe;
Nor let thy slimy trail mar that pure sphere,
Where innocence and beauty reign.
I pierce thy thin disguise, thy masked features dark,
And also see thy baser deep design —
Hence! hence away — and with thy kindred lost,
Moan, groan, and weep o'er all thy dark estate.

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

Ha! Spirit vain, conceited, proud,
Thou cowering slave, speaks't so to me?
Hence! hence thyself, and learn that I

Am greater far for wrong, than thou for good.
And hear still more: Thy plauded man
Is formed with spirit free to choose between
The good and ill. And I will droop thy towering crest.

ARIEL.

I will not longer talk with thee. I do a wrong
To tarry here and hear thy idle words. [Departs.

So Samiel went from world to world
In dark and hideous flight; and shadows grim,
Seemed following in his ill starred wake,
So wild his dreary flight forboding woe,
Until by patient search, he found
The earth, and trod in fiendish triumph there.

SCENE II.

HODRAH THE MAN IN THE EARTHLY PARADISE.

Forth walked the man, with strength and grace replete,
And viewed the changing landscape, all amazed;
At length found tongue, and thus he spake.

HODRAH.

All fair and beauteous all I see,
The trees, the herbs, the birds, beasts, fishes, all;
And I new transports feel at each new scene.
'Tis not the fruit of blind and luckless chance,
No, no, there surely is a cause—
I feel there is a cause; and in my breast
A new and rapturous feeling comes;
Hark! 'tis a zephyr whispering 'mong the trees—
No, 'tis a voice, conversing with mine inmost soul,
And bids me raise my new born powers in praise.
Yet still a void I feel; beasts have their kind
And birds and fishes too; I am alone,
But happy and serene—Yet all alone.
My mind is dim, my senses faint,
On you soft grass I rest, alone! [Falls asleep.

So man reposed, while angels guard 'round,
The slumber they could not have;
And long he slept, and woke refreshed,
When lo, approaching, was his other self—

So like, yet softer, gentler far than he.
Olah, the helpmeet, sweet and fair for man.
With modest downcast mien she came,
And wondering, raptured, gazed at him.

HODRAH SPEAKS.

Who art thou, fair and gentle one?
How cam'st thou here? and wilt thou stay
To cheer the solitude of man?

OLAH SPEAKS.

O thou art he, whom I so long have sought,
Thy presence fills my mind with rapturous joy,
I can not, will not from thee stray. Olah Ceases.

So forth they went, hand joined in hand,
And 'mid the fragrant groves in pleasant converse strayed,
And all the vast array of living things,
With soft and gentle rapture viewed.
At length the sun low sank—went down—
And darkness furled the slumbering world
In mantle soft; and o'er the firmament,
The glittering host of stars and worlds came out.
So all was done—created all and blest.
'Twas perfect, fair, and all harmonious.
And as the rolling worlds shone forth,
The high and shining host of spirits bright,
Looked down and saw the perfect world,
Broke forth in praise and hallelujahs loud,
To Him who made and kept it all.

SCENE III.

SAMIEL WALKING UP AND DOWN ON THE EARTH BY NIGHT.

So here I am at last, in this fair world;
The wild and seething pit is far away,
Yet, here I feel the tortures of a spirit lost;
My ears ring with the wailing shrieks
Of those that I brought thither too.
And I am bound, I feel the power
That formed these worlds, and soon must haste
Back to my den of dark despair.
But I will draw these beings down;
The thought inflames my mind. A demon's work;
Ariel hath truly said, I am a demon dark.

And all delight it is to me to fill
With spirits once so pure, the black abode of woe.
But I must now away, the morning soon
Will come to bind me here to earth. (*He goes.*)

Away he sped, like spectral cloud, so dark,
So foul and dread, the very air seemed thick
With poisonous vapors as he passed; and beasts
Sat shivering in their dens, in nameless fear;
But man and woman, all unconscious slept
The sweet and pure refreshing sleep of innocence,
Unmindful of the damning plot of Samiel.

CANTO V.

Archangels conversing together in the gardens of Paradise.

MINUEL SPEAKS.

What wondrous things we saw in yon created world—
The matchless power and wisdom there displayed.
The world, the sea, the trees, and living things,
And lastly, that fair being, who is fairer, wiser far
Than any of the angel host of heaven.
'Tis passing strange. Yet there is a cause therefor,
A hidden reason, grand and most sublime.

RAPHAEL SPEAKS.

Yes, 'tis passing strange. The being, wondrous fair,
Must be the image of the Great First Cause,
And we are not, but servants of that Cause;
All praise and glory to Him ever be.

ISRAFEL SPEAKS.

O archangelic spirits, wondrous fair,
'Tis in the image of the Great Invisible,
That this new being is create.
Create for purpose wondrous, glorious, grand,
To live, and glorify that beauteous world.

MICHAEL SPEAKS.

The worlds and beings we have all beheld,
Create for good; Of this we feel assured.

And the creation doth honor much the more,
The Great Creator's wondrous power.

GABRIEL SPEAKS.

He who did all these worlds and orbs create,
And with a glorious order people them,
Is He who hath from everlasting lived,
And through the countless future ever be.
Whose presence all the boundless universe
Doth fill with an omniscient here.
There is no other hand but His; no other power;
All, all are creatures of His handiwork.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

What more enraptured state than this,
Where we can see the mighty works,
And bask in that supremely grand
And mighty influence that hath formed the world.

SCENE II.

PANDEMONIUM.

So Samiel, in obedience to a power more great,
Resistless, all reluctant homeward sped;
Crossed the chaotic gulf that separates
The dark and noisome pit from fairer things;
And coming with relentless strides, and dark,
Thrice thundered at the ponderous gate.
It open swung, and in he strode
With fearful mien, the foulest fiend of all
That filled the dark abode of death.

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

Ho! all ye dark, lost, shrieking throng,
Cease, cease your futile groans and moans;
Come forth, and in infernal conclave hear
The tidings that I have to bring. [Samiel ceases.

So forth they came, that fallen fateful band,
And gathered 'round their chief, in vast amaze,
To hear the import of his words.
So woe begone, so dismal, and so foul
That ne'er was seen such retinue.

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

As late I passed the outer bound,
And left this woful land behind,
I came to a wide land of glorious light,
A crystal sea of ether bright and blue.
And swimming through this sea of outer air,
Were countless worlds of beauty most sublime,
Newly create, revolving in a mazy round.
And one most fair, of greater interest far,
The home of beings grandly pure and fair.
I went and saw all I have told;
'Tis true, for even demons to each must not lie.
And I have cheering news for all in here;
This being is created free to think and act
As seemeth best to him; save this alone,
He must not disobey the law divine.
I see a grand revenge. I'll make him disobey;
I'll hurl him down into this nether pit;
I'll burn his soul with black remorse,
And feed his vitals to this hellish host;
I'll blast his fair estate and cast him down,
And fit companion for the lost and ruined make.

[Samiel ceases.]

Then up arose from that dark conclave there,
A fiendish shout, more loud, more dread,
Than all the moans and shrieks and groans;
Then shook the gloomy prison walls,
And all the region seemed to quake again.
So Samuel, full of wild remorseful hate,
Went forth to perfect all his dark design.

SCENE III.

EARTH.

All lovely in its verdant youth
Lay the world, abode of man so fair.
The wide, wild sea, in polished perfect calm,
Stirred by the breeze, or torn by the hurricane;
A mirror vast in which the ether vault above,
Seemed bent in other sky below.
The land, with hills and valleys overspread,
The mountains vast, high towering to the skies,

And over all, the trees, the herb, the grass;
And roaming through the groves, or cleaving high
The air above, or sporting in the deep below,
The various creatures, glad and harmless, sported all.
All—all was peace and happy life;
Naught marred the quiet of the world;
And man, refreshed by peaceful slumber, woke,
Went forth in innocence, and plucked
The fruits, and ate in joy serene.
The zephyr played within the fragrant bowers;
A whisper seemed to float upon its wing.
Turn up thy thought, far, far above
Yon circling orb's most distant round:
Beyond the farthest bound of space,
To that bright home of Him who made the world.
Man felt the summons, and with joy divine,
Both turned them to the voice, and prayed
To Him who formed and kept them there.
High raised their morning song of praise,
And then went forth to view the scene.
O, beauteous world! O, happy scenes of peace—
The bright abode of happy man.

HODRAH SPEAKS.

O, being of myself! O, radiant one!
How doth the sight of thee new rapture make.
May this sweet converse ever last.

OLAH SPEAKS.

Thou art my life and strength; I live for thee,
And cannot from thy presence stray.

HODRAH SPEAKS.

Thou heard'st the whispered voice, that on the breeze
Came to our ears in gentle accents mild—
'Tis He who merits all our praise;
And we shall yet a closer knowledge have.

And thus they walked in sweet communion there,
The happy parents of the human race.

SCENE IV.

ARIEL AND GABRIEL WALKING ON EARTH.

Forth through the balmy groves of earth,
Ere yet the day appeared to light the scene;
But yet the moon and stars a gentle radiance cast
'Round the archangels as they walked
To view the scene, and seek for man.
At length, within a beauteous bower,
Sunk in deep slumbers, locked in each other's arms,
Lay the bright beings which they sought.
And as the angels looked, a smile of peace
O'erspread the sleeping faces fair;
Their lips, too, stirred, as if a prayer
They murmured as they slept. Long, long they gazed,
In admiration rapt, and lost in wonder too.
So 'round the couch the angels stood,
To guard the quiet rest of slumbering man,
And as they stood, they felt a presence near —
It came unconscious of the spirits bright—
'Twas Samiel — he who made a vow
To break the holy peace of man.
Ariel first saw the fiendish shape,
And with a holy indignation full,
Thus unto the demon spake.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

Hence, away, thou foulest fiend of death,
Hide thy lost presence in thy slimy pit,
Is not thy present condemnation full?
Then why come here to mar this peaceful scene.
Away, nor come not hence again;
Thou canst not harm these spirits undefiled.

SAMIEL SPEAKS.

Ha, know I thee, proud vaunter, thee
Well do I know; thou object slave,
Forever doomed to serve relentless power,
Throw off thy chains; come roam at will with me,
Nor be a cowering servant more.
'Tis better far to be a prince of night,
Than servant of the brighter day.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

Foul demon of the lowest hell, avaunt!
I know thy fate, thy home of punishment;
And seek'st thou to tempt me too,
To follow thee to never dying death?
Down, down, since thou art far beyond recall
Of mercy, or of relenting justice — far;
Go back, nor seek to drag another down
To share with thee the pit thy deeds prepared.

[Ariel ceases.]

And as he spake, the demon changed,
From the angelic form he wore, to that foul shape
He wore in pandemonium dark.
And swelling with infernal rage, he cast
A flaming dart full at the head,
Of Ariel; but he stepped aside,
And the foul weapon spent its force in air;
And darker, fiercer grew the form
Of Samiel, filled with malice full.
Then from the upper space there came
As seemed a hand, and flaming sword,
And smote the demon to the earth.
Then seemed a whisper floating on the breeze;
Low, soft, yet full of dread import:
Back to the place from whence thou comest,
And know that thou art powerless all for ill,
Unless this new created man shall disobey.
Then Samiel, cowering low, yet dark
With deadly hate and malice full,
Strode, mute, away yet casting back
Foul looks of dark design and woe.
Then the archangels in communion sweet,
Watched o'er the couch where man slept on,
Unconscious of the fierce encounter there.
Soon day appeared, and rose the sun,
And man, awakened by his light arose;
And gazing 'round, the two archangels saw;
Filled with amaze and wonder, at the sight,
Man looked and asked, who art thou, speak
Ye shining beings, are ye too, sons of light?

ARIEL SPEAKS.

We are the servants of the power that formed
The earth, the sun, and all the orbs above;
And all archangels and the host of cherubim.
We come to greet thee, and to hold
Sweet converse with thee, and to warn
Thee of a dark and fearful fiend of ill.
Thy peace is sure, so long as thou dost keep
The law thou did'st receive at first;
But breaking that, ye then shall fall
Into the power of him who is outcast.

RAPHAEL SPEAKS.

All joy and peace to him who keeps the law;
Death and ruin unto all who disobey.
And mark you well, this power of ill will come,
But heed him not, he cannot do thee hurt,
Unless thou first shall give him leave.

ARIEL SPEAKS.

Forget not in thy musings, Him who made
The great immensity of worlds and orbs,
And brought thee here to honor Him. [Ariel ceases.

So long they talked, and man was fain
To learn of all the glories of the universe.
At length the spirits left the earth,
And upward soared to that bright sphere
Of changeless beauty ever fair.
O! land of light, of joy unspeakable,
O! home of beings ever bright,
Far, far above the rolling orbs and suns,
There is thy pure and happy clime.
When weary, faint with toil and care,
And feeling faint upon our way,
Then open swings the shining portals there,
And we can dimly see thy glories through.
Home of the pure, land of the blest,
Long we to enter thy hallowed rest.
Free from all care, free from all pain,
Never more faint or weary again.

So man was formed in image pure, divine,
Reflex being of the Greater One above.
Bright, pure and happy in his earthly state,
Endowed with power to reproduce his kind,
And to enjoy a happy life of love;
With reason God-like, and more great
Than that of angels or of cherubim.
Would he had abode in that pure state
In which he was create, and ever be
The son of light, of truth, of life divine.

Thus was the first of human kind,
Hodrah, the perfect man, create
From the great essence Infinite,
For purpose wise, and pure and good.
O, matchless power; O, matchless love,
To so endow a feeble worm of earth
With such a grand and glorious destiny.
The earth, too, proves a workmanship divine,
With changing seas and mighty tempest roar,
Of birds, of fishes, beasts and all.
All prove design, each fills his place
By due appointment; all harmonious were.
And higher yet, throughout the boundless realm
Of space infinite, roll the countless worlds,
All peopled by a bright and happy race.
O, mighty multitude of suns and stars,
Roll on in harmony divine;
The least, the dimmest of that train,
In language grand proclaims a Cause.
So saw the archangelic host,
In grand array, shine forth the worlds;
Treading the vast extent of space
In march majestic, rolling ever on.
A deep and holy awe pervades the host,
And raising high their sweet celestial song,
Enraptured music ringing through the dome
Of Paradise on high.

Songs of the Archangels and the Cherubim.

Enthroned on high, high over all,
Thou who from everlasting art,
Thou dost inhabit all the bound

Of boundless space. Eternal One,
That formed the grand unnumbered host
Of worlds that swim through all the vault
Of Thy created firmament.

We praise Thee for creative power;
We bless Thee for Thy boundless love;
We love Thee for Thy watchful care,
And all Thy attributes divine.
Through all the vast domain,
From bound to bound, that hath no end,
Throughout the universe around,
Thou, Thou alone art only God.
Hallelujah, Hallelujah. Amen.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Now it came to pass that when Hermaida, the queen of Persia, heard the poem of Manos read, she gave command that it be written in the history of the kingdom of Persia, and it was done. But the poem is not all written in this book, *but will be all revealed hereafter.*

Now all the days of Hermaida, the queen of Persia, was seventy and six; and fifty-six years did she sit on the throne of Persia, and died, leaving neither sons nor daughters; for she never knew man.

And the brother's son of the queen reigned in her stead. His name was Cyrus, and he reigned in a wise and humane manner; so that all the works which Hermaida began was completed by Cyrus; and the nation prospered exceedingly.

The land of Gehalehmot was, as we have heard, overrun by Aklan, the wicked king of Persia; and after this the people trafficked no more, only so much as was necessary. So it came to pass that the people had no more dealings with the nations of the earth, and the kings of Aegyptus forgot the land, for a new dynasty of kings reigned over the land. Nevertheless, when the kings searched the histories, they found the good deeds of the people of the land of Gehalehmot.

After that land was spoiled by Aklan, the king of Persia, Kinaroth was governor in the land, and he set

all things in order, and builded up that which was broken down, and restored the prosperity of the land as far as possible.

So Kinaroth was governor of the land and ruled over the people for thirty-eight years. And he founded the house of Kinaroth, which were cunning workmen; and of this house was afterwards Kinar, in the one hundred and sixty-fifth age thereafter.

Now the house of Kinaroth could no man enter save the first-born of each generation thereof. And the fathers learned their sons, and the knowledge thereof gradually increased, until at last the whole was placed in a book, and sealed up until such time as it should be revealed in the latter days. It so happened that at the birth of Kinar, the cunning workman, he was last of his race, and he never had son or daughter; but upon his death a new order was established by him, so that like contingency should never occur again. Thus was formed the temple and the priests of Kinar, as hath been related in this book.

So Kinaroth was governor in the land; and the people waxed prosperous, and forgot the calamity brought about by the wicked king of Persia. But the people increased not to any great degree.

So Kinaroth died, and Azmon reigned as governor in his room. In the four and twentieth year of the reign of Azmon, on a certain day, as the men wrought in the fields, and the women span in the houses, behold the sun was darkened for the space of a quarter of an hour, and it was on the fourth hour of the morning; and the people were greatly alarmed and fled in haste unto their houses; and afterward they would not return to their labor, until Azmon, the governor, having

asked of the sons of Kinaroth, sent forth proclamation saying: Fear not, what ye have seen is nothing out of the ordinary course of things, but happeneth from time to time, in accordance with the rule of the stars of heaven. So the people were assured and every one returned in peace unto his labor.

So Azmon reigned forty-one years and died. And after him did Sathur rule the people; and Sathur was a good man, but not of the wisest; and the people did live in peace and quietness during the reign of sixty and four governors after Sathur. And the history thereof would be of exceeding great interest, but it will not be expedient to write it all in this book, as it would be too great.

So in the latter times did Bastinor rule as governor, and there was a man of the younger sons of the house of Kinaroth, who was a just man; and he had three sons; the elder was named Yohak, the younger Obo, the other Sartus. Now Yohak had an only son named Altus; and Altus had a son named Kaiah, who was afterwards the governor, and the first king of the people.

And Obo had a son named Mathurus; and Mathurus had a son named Alion; and Alion was the father of Algoonah.

And Yohak was an huntsman, and delighted to seek the beasts of the forest, and he was slain in the forest by a wild beast.

Now the ancestors of Algoonah were of the ancient order of the land of Gehalehmot; and his father Alion, was one of the minor judges of the people, who sat at the gates of the city, and settled disputes that arose among them.

So Bastinor reigned for thirty years, and died ; and after him was Kaiah chosen ; and Kaiah was nineteen years old when he began to reign.

Now Kaiah was of short stature, and of a gentle disposition, and all the people loved him and respected him. Now in the twentieth year of the reign of Kaiah, was there war in the land of Assyria ; for Ramases, king of Aegyptus, came up to war against him, because the king of Assyria compelled the merchants of Aegyptns to pay tribute unto the land of Assyria as they passed through.

Is not the history of this war been written? And the acts of the king Merodach are all set forth.

CHAPTER XL.

So there was prosperity and peace throughout all the land of Mezzinaroth, for the people possessed the land, and greatly improved it, even from the great river, up and down the land, for the space of a thousand and more furlongs.

In the province of Jeshurim, in the province of Biah, in the province of Gonath, in the province of Mestus, in the province of Tervan, in the province of Osurus, and in the province of Albanus, was there peace and quietness among the people; and the number of the people was twenty seven hundred thousand, men, women and children; their substance also, was very great, for the land brought forth in her abundance; and there was no lack of anything.

And Algoonah called unto Jeboran, saying, Send forth proclamation immediately, and gather together all the heads of the people, into this the great city; and bring them from every land, and from every province, for I would speak with them.

Therefore, did Jeboran sent forth proclamation as his father directed, unto every province, and the governors thereof.

And all the chief men journeyed unto the city of Algoonah. And in the seventh month of the year, while the time of harvest was on the land, did

they congregate within the city, to the number of sixty and four thousand choice men; and it was signified unto Algoonah, saying, That the people congregate on the shore of the great river, for there was no temple nor house on earth large enough to hold them.

And Algoonah was brought, and sat upon a throne in the midst of the people, and his strength was much departed by reason of age, so that he could hardly speak unto them. But Algoonah looked upon the people, and his heart enkindled within him, and the strength of life returned unto him, so that he beckoned with his hand unto the people, and immediately the herald blew the golden trumpet, and there was silence in all the vast multitude.

And after there was silence, Algoonah lifted up his voice strong and clear, and spake unto the people, saying:

Hearken, O ye people, and give ear, O ye men of Kaiah. You are as no nation on earth, for the wonderful manner in which ye have been brought hither. These one hundred and thirty years have I sojourned on earth, and all the days of my life have passed as a morning hour that tarrieth not, but speedeth quickly away. Yet have I seen this people, now strong and mighty, driven forth from the possessions of their fathers, given them by the great and good Hykos, king of Aegyptus; and I have seen them abide in the land of Mozman during the life of the most excellent Amarah, and they found no abiding place there, for the wicked young king, Aristoblah, drave them forth, and we came forth, not knowing whither we would rest with our wives and little ones. Then came we into the land of Katharia, and journeyed for the space of three

years through that land and abode not there, for we distrusted the people thereof.

So we lived on the islands given us by the great king for a season, until the days of the good Osurus; who went forth and explored this land and brought us thither. Now, ye all see the prosperity of this land; how that from a wilderness it hath been reclaimed and made to flourish and bring forth abundantly; and there is great peace throughout all this land, for every man agreeth to live peaceably with his neighbor. O, that it might thus continue, then would the grandeur of your influence as a people widen and extend unto the latest generation. O, my people, cultivate a peaceable spirit and it will be thus. Do not let one province or one part of the country set itself against any other part, and all this wide land shall be subdued and inhabited by you, and your strength shall be as the strength of of one man. And there can be no nation so powerful as to drive you thence. But the glory and honor of nations shall be upon you. O, my people, cultivate a spirit of wisdom and seek after knowledge; for wisdom is the strength of a nation, and there is nothing that abideth like wisdom. Strength faileth and life passeth away like the mists of the morning, but wisdom endureth forever.

I beseech you to read well the histories of the great and good men who have lived in our nation, and especially to consider well the life and deeds of the noble Kaiah, for he is well worthy of your honor. Lo, I knew him from the days of my youth unto the strength of my manhood, and there was no evil in him, but he was as a father unto all men.

Also the life of Kinar, the cunning workman, is one

of honor and good. Although the purpose of his life hath been dark and mysterious, and he was not familiar unto the people; yet was he one of the most useful men of our people; and the fame of his works will go down to the latest days. I would also speak of Biariah, Osurus and Jeshurim, whom many of you have seen; these were all good men and worthy examples for you to follow, for they all wrought that which was right and just, and did no evil, but good in their generation, and were full of truth and wisdom.

So as Algoonah spake, the spirit of futurity came over him, and he said:

Lo, I see a nation renowned and great, and they spread from one end of the land even unto the other; and the workmanship of their hands shall tell their history unto another nation, who shall abide in this land; and this other nation shall be mighty and strong and shall stand forever; for their government shall be founded on the everlasting principles of truth and justice.

And as I look and see that the men of Kaiah have dwindled down to a weak and outcast remnant, my mind is filled with sorrow; but there shall arise in the latter days, people who shall hold to the principle that the world is the heritage of man, and that justice shall prevail in those latter times. Then shall the people who inhabit this land look forth and see the work of the hands of the people of Kaiah, and shall wonder exceedingly, until such time as the matter shall be made plain.

O, my people! Algoonah goeth forth and cometh not back, for he shall lie down and rise no more forever. The length of years is upon me, and I go down

to the long sleep from which there is no awakening. I have loved the people, and have spent my life for them.

You shall hear the voice of Algoonah no more.

Farewell, all my people.

So when Algoonah had ceased speaking, there arose a great lamentation among the people, for they saw that the strength of life had departed from him. And Algoonah called the patriarch of the people, and the men of the temple of Kinar; and they poured oil out before Jeboran, and he was made king in presence of all the people.

And they carried Algoonah into his chamber, and laid him upon his bed; and he lay with all his strength departed, and spake not for the space of two days. Then he called Jeboran, his son, unto him, and said:

Unto thee this day cometh the whole government of this people, for I go the way of all men. I pray thee bury my body beside the great river, and place a monument thereon; not to glorify myself, but to show unto all nations, through all coming time, the life of one who was devoted unto his people. I pray thee to remember the injunctions of your father, and be a father unto this people, as I have been a father unto thee.

And as Algoonah spake, his mind wandered, and they thought him dead; but he turned and looked upon Jeboran and died. And Jeboran fell upon him and wept bitterly.

And the word went forth, and there was great lamentations all over the city. And Erech sent forth for Jerboran, and made proclamation throughout all the land of Mezzinaroth; and there was deep mourning for the king Algoonah for the space of fifty days. And

the people did no work, neither cast yokes upon the beasts of burden, until the days of mourning were past.

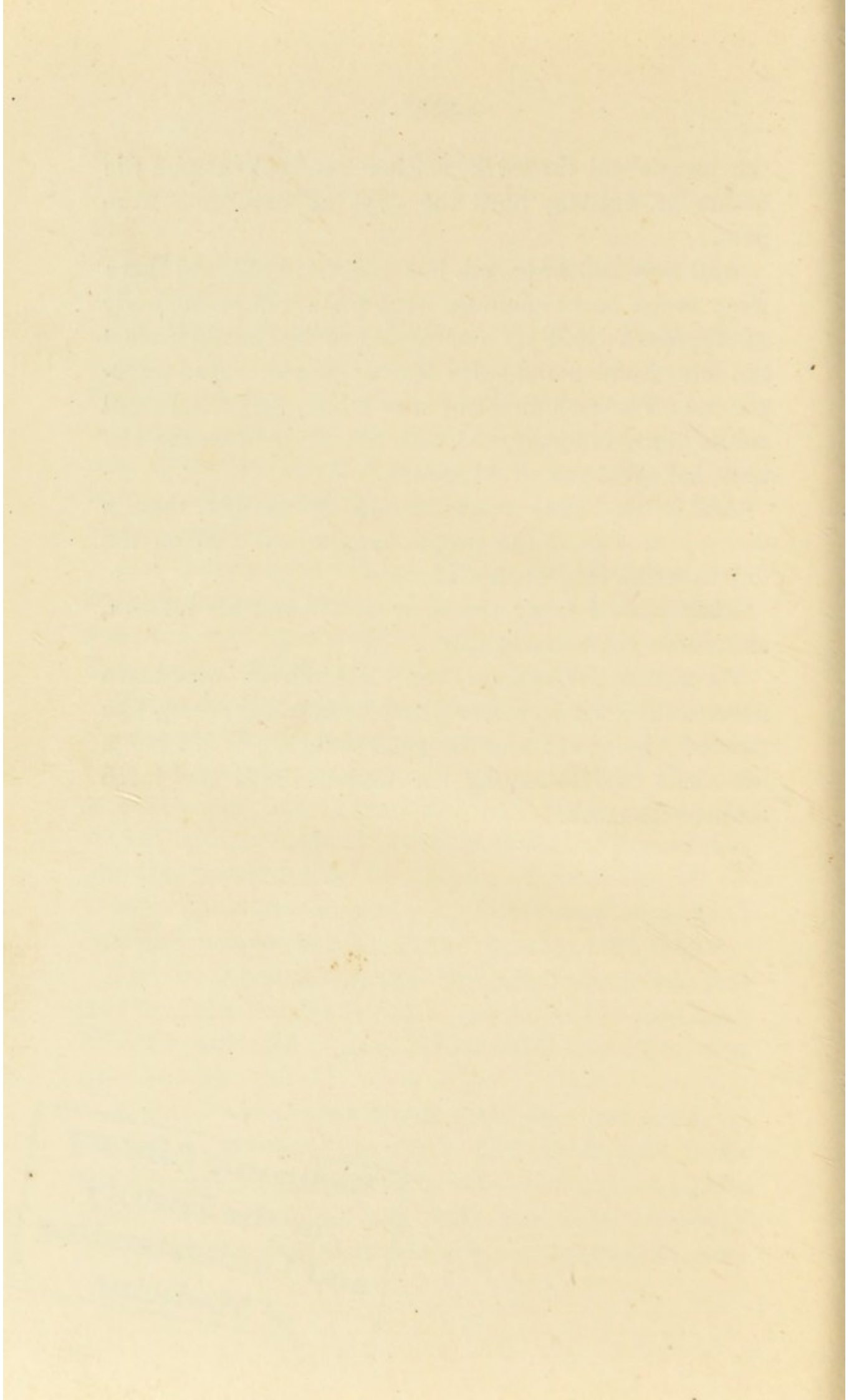
And they laid Algoonah in a coffin of gold, and there were seven score maidens went forth before the body of Algoonah; and he was carried to his burial amidst the lamentations and tears of the people. And Jeboran raised a monument of fine stone, forty and eight cubits high, and engraved with letters of brass the virtues and greatness of Algoonah.

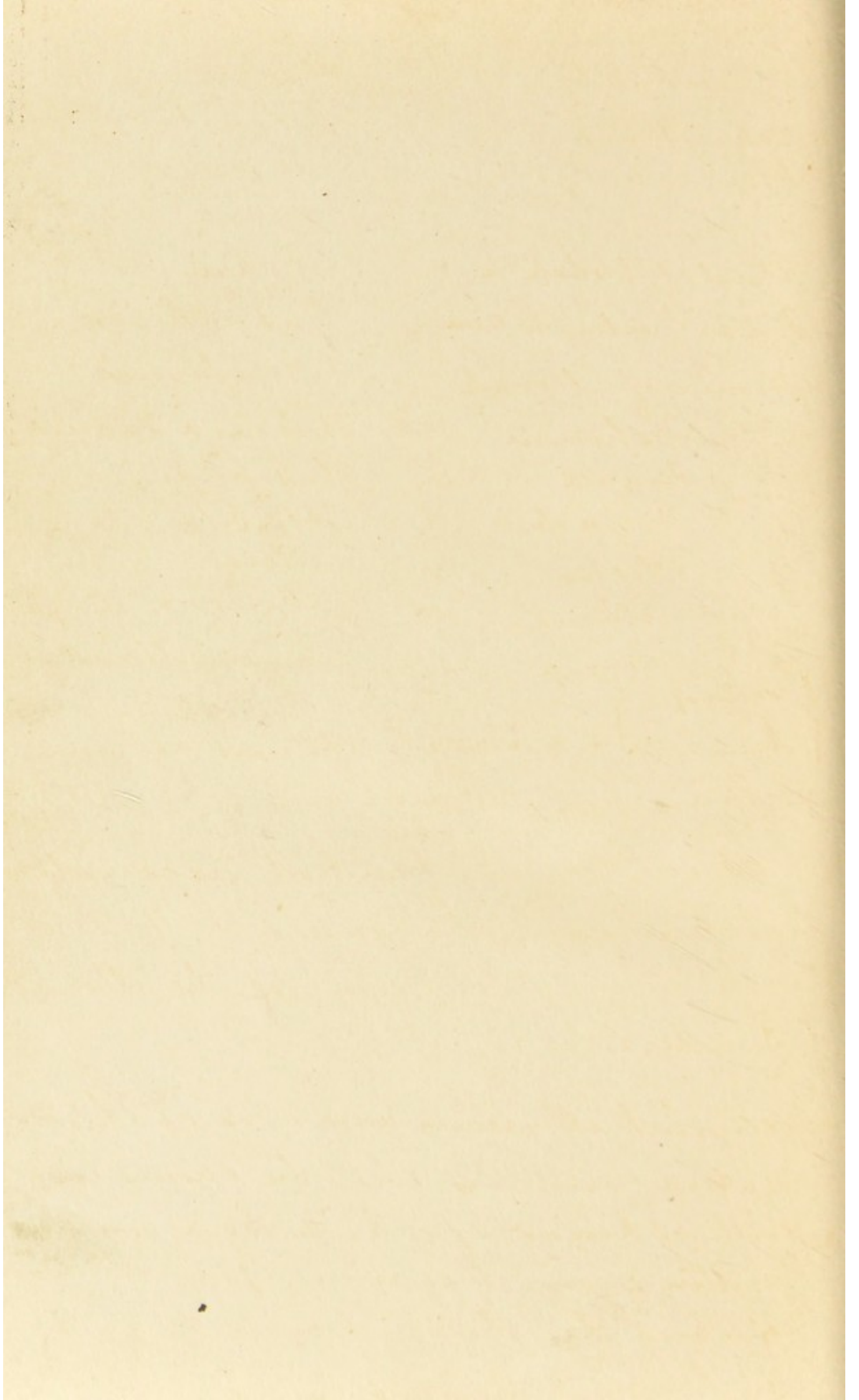
And it was made a law among the people, that in every year should the people mourn and fast on the day in which Algoonah died.

Thus passed away the man who loved his fellows, and doeth good continually.

So among all nations and all kindreds was there never a king whose memory has been treasured up like that of Algoonah; and the good influence of his noble life shall be felt among the nations until the earth shall be no more.

**Wellcome Library
for the History
and Understanding
of Medicine**





Explanation of Names.

Ancient	=	Modern
Behalekmat	=	Afgghanistan in part
Mozman	=	India
Kathana	=	China
Island of Nookah	=	Japan
First landing in Am.	=	Yukon River
Province of Morah	=	California
" Jeshunnir	=	St Louis & vicinity
" Honata	=	Mississippi
" Monnah	"	Florida
" Meslus	"	Ohio
" Albanar	"	Mexico & City of -
" Terwan	"	Iowa & Minn ^{ts}

{ order of }
 Kinariote - a Temple of Kenar at now
 St Louis from this order was suggested
 Masonry and its kindred associations
 The Terwan are the purest of the American
 Indians and descendants of the Round
 Builders.

Ancient Mexicans were also of this order
 nation and this will be shown in the
 book of Kenar of which 100 pages are
 written giving the origin of the Kinariote
 of which the flying globe is the great emblem
 of the Temple of the Sun

